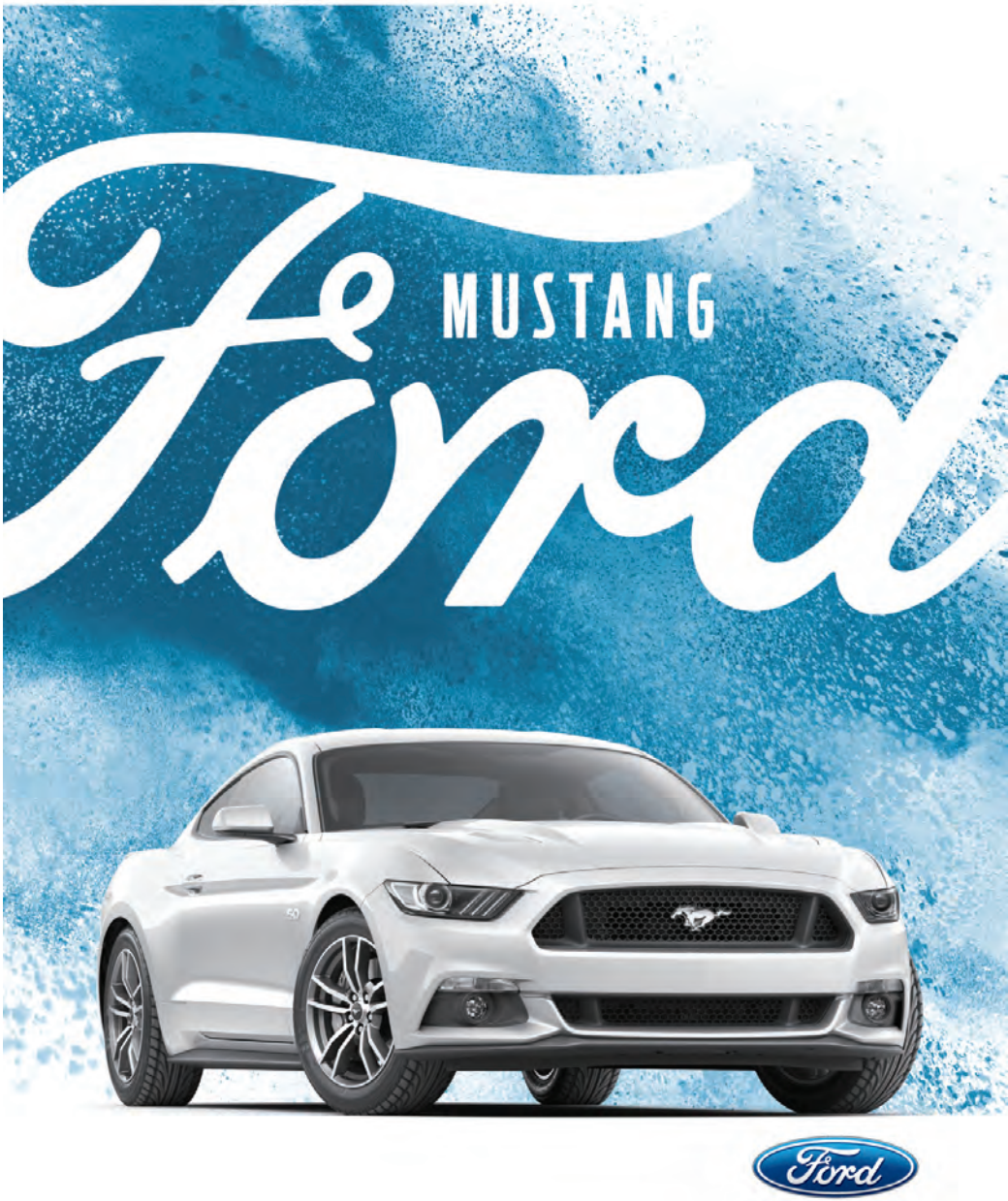
Owner's Manual



May 2016
First Printing



HR3J 19A321 BDA



The information contained in this publication was correct at the time of going to print. In the interest of continuous development, we reserve the right to change specifications, design or equipment at any time without notice or obligation. No part of this publication may be reproduced, transmitted, stored in a retrieval system or translated into any language in any form by any means without our written permission. Errors and omissions excepted.

© Ford Motor Company 2016

All rights reserved.

Part Number: 20160331175045

Table of Contents

Introduction
About This Manual....5
Symbols Glossary....5
Data Recording....7
Replacement Parts Recommendation....8
Mobile Communications Equipment....8

At a Glance
Instrument Panel Overview....9

Child Safety
Child Restraints....11
Selecting a Child Restraint System....12
Installing Child Restraints....12
Child Restraint Anchorage Locations....13
Protecting Larger Children....15
Checking Seatbelt Fit....15

Seatbelts
Principle of Operation....16
Fastening the Seatbelts....17
Seatbelt Reminder....18

Supplementary Restraints System
Principle of Operation....19
Driver Airbag....19
Passenger Airbag....20
Front Passenger Sensing System....20
Side Airbags....23
Driver and Passenger Knee Airbags....23
Side Curtain Airbags - Coupe....24
Crash Sensors and Airbag Indicator....24

Pedestrian Protection
Principle of Operation....26

Keys and Remote Controls
General Information on Radio Frequencies....28
Remote Control....28
Replacing a Lost Key or Remote Control....30

MyKey™
Principle of Operation....31
Creating a MyKey....32
Clearing All MyKeys....33
Checking MyKey System Status....34
Using MyKey With Remote Start Systems....35
MyKey Troubleshooting....35

Doors and Locks
Locking and Unlocking....36
Keyless Entry....38

Security
Passive Anti-Theft System....41
Anti-Theft Alarm - Vehicles With: Perimeter Alarm....41
Anti-Theft Alarm - Vehicles With: Interior Sensor....41
Anti-Theft Alarm - Vehicles With: Integral Battery....43

Steering Wheel
Adjusting the Steering Wheel....45
Audio Control....45
Voice Control....46
Cruise Control....46
Information Display Control....46

Wipers and Washers
Windshield Wipers....47
Autowipers....47
Windshield Washers....48

Mustang (CZG) Australia, Vehicles Built From: 02-05-2016, enAUS, First Printing

Table of Contents

Lighting
General Information....49
Lighting Control....49
Autolamps....50
Instrument Lighting Dimmer....51
Headlamp Exit Delay....51
Daytime Running Lamps....51
Front Fog Lamps....51
Rear Fog Lamps....52
Headlamp Leveling....52
Direction Indicators....52
Welcome Lighting....53
Interior Lamps....53
Ambient Lighting....53

Windows and Mirrors
Power Windows....54
Global Opening....54
Exterior Mirrors....55
Interior Mirror....56
Sun Visors....56

Instrument Cluster
Gauges....57
Warning Lamps and Indicators....59
Audible Warnings and Indicators....61

Information Displays
General Information....63
Information Messages....70

Climate Control
Principle of Operation....80
Air Vents....80
Automatic Climate Control....81
Hints on Controlling the Interior Climate....82
Heated Windows and Mirrors....85
Cabin Air Filter....85

Seats
Sitting in the Correct Position....86
Head Restraints....87
Manual Seats....88
Power Seats....88
Rear Seats....89
Climate Controlled Seats....90

Auxiliary Power Points
Auxiliary Power Points....92
Cigar Lighter....92

Storage Compartments
Cup Holders....93
Center Console....93
Glasses Holder....93

Starting and Stopping the Engine
General Information....94
Keyless Starting....94
Steering Wheel Lock....95
Starting a Gasoline Engine....95
Engine Block Heater....97

Fuel and Refueling
Safety Precautions....99
Fuel Quality....100
Fuel Filler Funnel Location....100
Running Out of Fuel....100
Catalytic Converter....101
Refueling....102

Transmission
Manual Transmission....105
Automatic Transmission....105

Rear Axle
Limited Slip Differential....109

Mustang (CZG) Australia, Vehicles Built From: 02-05-2016, enAUS, First Printing

Table of Contents

Brakes
General Information....110
Hints on Driving With Anti-Lock Brakes....110
Parking Brake....110
Hill Start Assist....111

Traction Control
Principle of Operation....113
Using Traction Control....113

Stability Control
Principle of Operation....114
Using Stability Control....115

Parking Aids
Principle of Operation....117
Rear Parking Aid....117
Rear View Camera....118

Cruise Control
Principle of Operation....122
Using Cruise Control....122

Driving Aids
Steering....124
Drive Control....124

Load Carrying
General Information....127

Towing
Towing a Trailer....128
Towing the Vehicle on Four Wheels....128

Convertible Top
Opening the Convertible Top....129
Closing the Convertible Top....130

Driving Hints
Breaking-In....132
Reduced Engine Performance....132
Economical Driving....132
Cold Weather Precautions....133
Driving Through Water....133
Floor Mats....133

Roadside Emergencies
Hazard Warning Flashers....135
First Aid Kit....135
Warning Triangle....135
Fuel Shutoff....135
Jump Starting the Vehicle....136
Post-Crash Alert System....138
Transporting the Vehicle....138
Towing Points....139

Fuses
Fuse Specification Chart....140
Changing a Fuse....147

Maintenance
General Information....149
Opening and Closing the Hood....149
Under Hood Overview - 2.3L EcoBoost™....151
Under Hood Overview - 5.0L....152
Engine Oil Dipstick....153
Engine Oil Check....153
Engine Coolant Check....153
Automatic Transmission Fluid Check....157
Brake Fluid Check....158
Clutch Fluid Check - Manual Transmission....158
Washer Fluid Check....158
Fuel Filter....159
Changing the 12V Battery....159
Checking the Wiper Blades....160

Changing the Wiper Blades....160
Adjusting the Headlamps....161
Changing a Bulb....163
Bulb Specification Chart....166

Vehicle Care

Cleaning the Exterior....168
Cleaning the Interior....168
Cleaning Leather Seats....170
Repairing Minor Paint Damage....170
Cleaning the Alloy Wheels....170
Cleaning the Convertible Top....171

Wheels and Tires

General Information....172
Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit....172
Tire Care....178
Using Summer Tires....179
Tire Pressure Monitoring System....179
Changing a Road Wheel....183
Driving at High Speed....188
Technical Specifications....189

Capacities and Specifications

Vehicle Dimensions - Coupe....190
Vehicle Dimensions - Convertible....191
Vehicle Identification Plate....192
Vehicle Identification Number....192

Audio System

General Information....194
Audio Unit - Vehicles With: Premium AM/FM/CD....195
Digital Radio....197
USB Port....198
Media Hub....198

SYNC™ 3

General Information....199
Home Screen....208
Using Voice Recognition....209
Entertainment....215
Climate....219
Phone....223
Navigation....228
Apps....234
Settings....235
SYNC™ 3 Troubleshooting....248

Appendices

Electromagnetic Compatibility....260
End User License Agreement....263
Type Approvals....287

ABOUT THIS MANUAL

Thank you for choosing Ford. We recommend that you take some time to get to know your vehicle by reading this manual. The more that you know about your vehicle, the greater the safety and pleasure you will get from driving it.

WARNING

Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

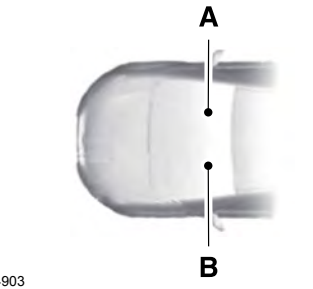
Note: *This manual describes product features and options available throughout the range of available models, sometimes even before they are generally available. It may describe options not fitted to the vehicle you have purchased.*

Note: *Some of the illustrations in this manual may show features as used in different models, so may appear different to you on your vehicle.*

Note: *Always use and operate your vehicle in line with all applicable laws and regulations.*

Note: *Pass on this manual when selling your vehicle. It is an integral part of your vehicle.*

This manual may qualify the location of a component as left-hand side or right-hand side. The side is determined when facing forward in the seat.



E154903

A Right-hand side.

B Left-hand side.

SYMBOLS GLOSSARY

These are some of the symbols you may see on your vehicle.


Safety alert


See Owner's Manual


Air conditioning system



Anti-lock braking system


Avoid smoking, flames or sparks


Battery


Battery acid


Brake fluid - non petroleum based


Brake system


Cabin air filter


Check fuel cap


Child safety door lock or unlock


Child seat lower anchor


Child seat tether anchor


Cruise control


Do not open when hot


Engine air filter


Engine coolant


Engine coolant temperature


Engine oil


Explosive gas


Fan warning


Fasten seatbelt


Front airbag


Front fog lamps


Fuel pump reset


Fuse compartment


Hazard warning flashers


Heated rear window


Heated windshield

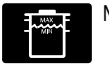

Interior luggage compartment release


Jack


Keep out of reach of children


Lighting control


Low tire pressure warning


Maintain correct fluid level


Note operating instructions


Panic alarm


Parking aid


Parking brake


Power steering fluid


Power windows front/rear


Power window lockout


Service engine soon


Side airbag


Shield the eyes


Stability control


Windshield wash and wipe

DATA RECORDING

A large number of electronic components of your vehicle contain data storage modules temporarily or permanently storing technical data about the condition of the vehicle, events and malfunctions.

In general, this technical information documents the condition of parts, modules, systems or the environment:

- Operating conditions of system components (e.g. filling levels).
- Status messages of the vehicle and its individual components (e.g. number of wheel revolutions/rotational speed, deceleration, lateral acceleration).
- Malfunctions and defects in important system components (e.g. lighting and brake system).
- Vehicle reactions in particular driving situations (e.g. inflation of an airbag, activation of the stability regulation system).
- Environmental conditions (e.g. temperature).

These data are exclusively technical and help identification and correction of malfunctions as well as optimisation of vehicle functions. Motion profiles indicating travelled routes cannot be created with these data.

If services are used (e.g. repair works, service processes, warranty cases, quality assurance), employees of the service network (including manufacturers) are able to read out this technical information from the event and malfunction data storage modules using special diagnostic devices. If required, you will receive further information. After a malfunction has been corrected, these data are deleted from the malfunction storage module or they are constantly overwritten.

When using the vehicle, situations may occur in which these technical data related to other information (accident report, damages on the vehicle, witness statements, etc.) may be associated with a specific person - possibly, with the assistance of an expert.

Additional functions contractually agreed upon with the client (e.g. vehicle location in emergency cases) allow the transmission of particular vehicle data from the vehicle.

REPLACEMENT PARTS RECOMMENDATION

We have built your vehicle to the highest standards using quality parts. We recommend that you demand the use of genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts whenever your vehicle requires scheduled maintenance or repair. You can clearly identify genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts by looking for the Ford, FoMoCo or Motorcraft branding on the parts or their packaging.

Scheduled Maintenance and Mechanical Repairs

One of the best ways for you to make sure that your vehicle provides years of service is to have it maintained in line with our recommendations using parts that conform to the specifications detailed in this Owner's Manual. Genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts meet or exceed these specifications.

Collision Repairs

We hope that you never experience a collision, but accidents do happen. Genuine Ford replacement collision parts meet our stringent requirements for fit, finish, structural integrity, corrosion protection and dent resistance. During vehicle development we validate that these parts deliver the intended level of protection as a whole system. A great way to know for sure you are getting this level of protection is to use genuine Ford replacement collision parts.

Warranty on Replacement Parts

Genuine Ford and Motorcraft replacement parts are the only replacement parts that benefit from a Ford Warranty. The Ford Warranty may not cover damage caused to your vehicle as a result of failed non-Ford parts. For additional information, refer to the terms and conditions of the Ford Warranty.

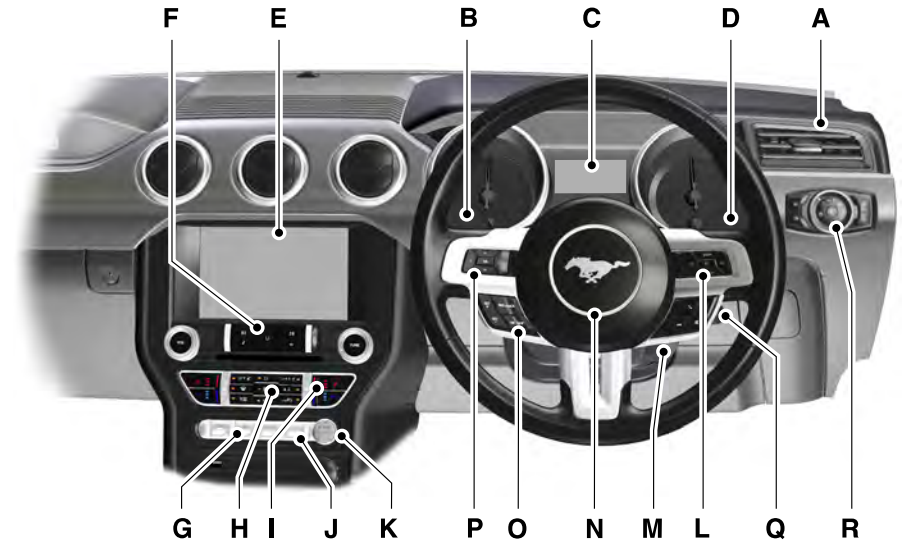
MOBILE COMMUNICATIONS EQUIPMENT

WARNING

Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Using mobile communications equipment is becoming increasingly important in the conduct of business and personal affairs. However, you must not compromise your own or others' safety when using such equipment. Mobile communications can enhance personal safety and security when appropriately used, particularly in emergency situations. Safety must be paramount when using mobile communications equipment to avoid negating these benefits. Mobile communication equipment includes, but is not limited to, cellular phones, pagers, portable email devices, text messaging devices and portable two-way radios.

INSTRUMENT PANEL OVERVIEW



E199408

A Air vents. See **Hints on Controlling the Interior Climate** (page 82).
B Wiper lever. See **Wipers and Washers** (page 47).
C Instrument cluster. See **Instrument Cluster** (page 57).
D Direction indicators. See **Direction Indicators** (page 52).
E Information and entertainment display. See **Information Displays** (page 63).
F Audio unit. See **Audio System** (page 194).
G Drive control switches. See **Drive Control** (page 124).
H Climate controls. See **Climate Control** (page 80).
I Climate controlled seats. See **Climate Controlled Seats** (page 90).
J Hazard flasher switch. See **Hazard Warning Flashers** (page 135).
K Keyless start button. See **Keyless Starting** (page 94).
L Audio control. See **Audio Control** (page 45).
M Steering wheel adjustment. See **Adjusting the Steering Wheel** (page 45).
N Horn.

O Cruise control switches. See **Cruise Control** (page 122).

P Information display controls. See **Information Display Control** (page 46).

Q Luggage compartment release button. See **Locking and Unlocking** (page 36).

R Lighting control. See **Lighting Control** (page 49).

CHILD RESTRAINTS

WARNINGS

Children must always be properly restrained.

This section provides useful information on the installation and safe use of child restraints. Ford strongly recommends that you read and understand this section before carrying children in your vehicle.

It is the driver's responsibility to ensure that the children are seated in suitable child restraints prescribed by the laws of the State or Territory in which the vehicle is operated.

If you are in any doubt about the laws that apply in your location, please consult your local Authorised Ford Dealer or Local Approved Child Restraint Fitting Station for assistance.

WARNING

NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.



E212161

WARNINGS

Seatbelts and seats can become hot in a vehicle that has been closed up in sunny weather, they could burn a small child. Check seat covers and buckles before you place a child anywhere near them.

Read and follow the child restraint manufacturer's instructions when you are fitting a child restraint.

Do not alter or modify child restraints in any way.

Do not hold a child on your lap when the vehicle is moving.

Do not leave children unattended in your vehicle.

On hot days, the temperature inside the vehicle can rise very quickly. Exposure of people or animals to these high temperatures for even a short time can cause death or serious heat related injuries, including brain damage. Small children are particularly at risk.

Destroy the child restraint if it has been in a severe crash, even if no damage is visible.

SELECTING A CHILD RESTRAINT SYSTEM

To provide protection, a child restraint system should meet three requirements.

1. **The child restraint system complies with Australian Standard AS1754.** Infants and children must be properly restrained at all times in an approved child restraint which conforms to Australian Standards AS1754 - 2004 or later. Look for the Australian Standard Approval Mark on the child restraint.
2. **The child restraint must be suitable for the size and weight of the child and must be properly fitted and adjusted.** Use the child restraint exactly as shown in the instructions provided with the child restraint. If you have any doubts, contact the child restraint manufacturer or consult an approved Restraint Fitting Station.
3. **The child restraint system should fit the vehicle seating position (or positions) where it will be used.** Due to variations in the design of child restraint systems, vehicle seats and seatbelts, all child restraint systems may not fit all seating positions. Before purchasing a child restraint system, it is recommended that the child restraint system is tested in the specific vehicle seating position (or positions) where it is intended to be used. If a previously purchased child restraint does not fit, you may need to purchase a different one that will fit.

INSTALLING CHILD RESTRAINTS

WARNINGS

NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.

Incorrectly fitted child restraints may swing, tip or come away causing death or injury.

Do not use a child restraint if the tether strap falls into a split in the vehicle seat back or falls off the edge of the vehicle seat.

After installing a child restraint system, push and pull the system forward and back and from side to side to verify that it is secured.

Be sure to read and follow the instructions provided by the child restraint manufacturer. If you have any doubts contact the child restraint manufacturer or consult an approved Restraint Fitting Station. Your automobile club or local vehicle registration authority can provide location details of fitting stations.

When installing the child restraint attaching clip to the anchor fitting, raise the head restraint (where fitted) and pass the tether strap between the head restraint supports. This will prevent the tether strap from falling off the outboard edge of the seating positions.



E166723

Note: *Side curtain air bags (where fitted) will not interfere with a properly installed child restraint system or booster seat, because they are designed to inflate downward from the headliner above the doors along the side window openings.*

When a child restraint system is not being used, either remove it and store it in a safe place, or make sure it is properly secured. An unsecured child restraint system can be thrown around the vehicle in a collision or sudden stop and injure someone.

CHILD RESTRAINT ANCHORAGE LOCATIONS

Upper (top tether) anchorages

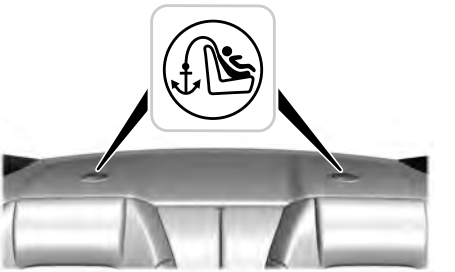
WARNING

Child restraint anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seatbelts, harnesses or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.

There are two child restraint top tether anchorages, one for each rear seating position.

The top tether anchorages are only suitable for child restraints conforming to Australian Standard AS1754-2004 or later.

Coupe



E217152



E217153

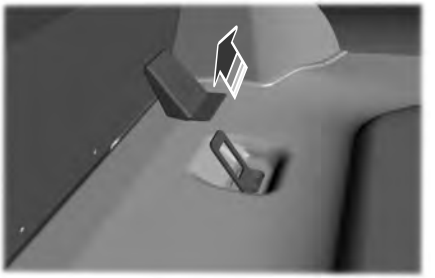
Note: *Arrow points to front of vehicle.*

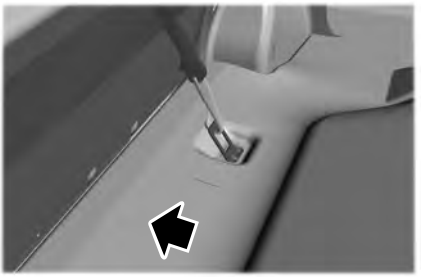
If your child restraint does not have an approved latched hook attaching clip as shown, you should consult an approved restraint fitting station.

Convertible



E217154





E217155

Note: *Arrow points to front of vehicle.*

Note: *For easier access, attach the tether with the convertible top up.*

WARNINGS

Always ensure that the attaching clip is properly engaged with the anchor fitting and the tether strap length is adjusted to remove any slack.

Always ensure that the locking mechanism of the rear seatback is fully engaged when in the upright position, by attempting to pull it down again.

Do not attach a tether strap to anything other than the correct tether anchor point.

Make sure that the seatback is secure and fully engaged in the catch.

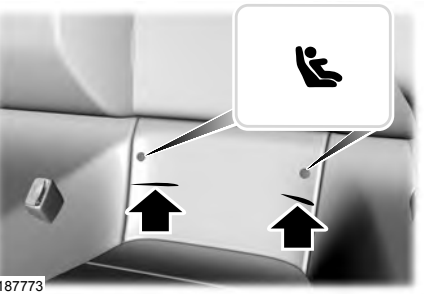
Make sure that the tether strap tightening mechanism remains accessible when the seatback is fully engaged in the catch.

ISOFIX LOWER ANCHORAGES

WARNING

The ISOFIX lower anchorages must be used in conjunction with the upper (top tether) anchorages.

Your vehicle has ISOFIX lower anchorages located in the lower backrest of the rear seats, as shown in the following picture.



E187773

PROTECTING LARGER CHILDREN

The rear seats (where provided) are the safest place for children.

When a child outgrows the recommended weight or height limits for a forward facing child restraint system, the child should sit on a booster seat and wear a lap-sash seatbelt. The raised seating position will allow you to position the shoulder strap of the adult seatbelt over the centre of your child's shoulder and the lap strap tightly across its hips. A booster seat should be used until the child is tall enough for the lap-sash seatbelt to fit properly.

Typical Booster Seat



E70710

WARNINGS

- Do not install a booster seat with only the lap strap of the seatbelt.
- Do not install a booster seat with a seatbelt that is slack or twisted.

CHECKING SEATBELT FIT

If the lap-sash seatbelt touches or crosses the child's neck, then the child needs a booster seat.

WARNINGS

- Never wear a seatbelt across the neck. This could result in serious neck injury in the event of a collision.
- Do not put the seatbelt under your child's arm or behind its back.
- Do not use pillows, books or towels to boost your child's height.
- Make sure that your children sit in an upright position.

PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

WARNINGS

The wearing of a seatbelt is a mandatory requirement. Seatbelts should be properly fastened and adjusted before the vehicle is driven. Adjust the driver's seat position before fastening the seatbelt.

Seatbelts are designed to bear upon the bony structure of the body and should be worn low across the front of the pelvis or the pelvis, chest and shoulders, as applicable; wearing the lap section of the belt across the abdominal area must be avoided.

Wear a seatbelt and keep sufficient distance between yourself and the steering wheel. Only when you use the seatbelt properly, can it hold you in position to achieve its optimum effect. See **Sitting in the Correct Position** (page 86).

Never use a seatbelt for more than one person; it is dangerous to put a belt around a child being carried on the occupant's lap.

Use the correct buckle for each seatbelt.

Do not use a seatbelt that is slack or twisted.

Do not wear thick clothing. The seatbelt must fit tightly around your body to achieve its optimum effect.

Position the shoulder strap of the seatbelt over the centre of your shoulder and position the lap strap tightly across your hips.

WARNINGS

Care should be taken to avoid contamination of the webbing with polishes, oils and chemicals, and particularly battery acid. Cleaning may safely be carried out using mild soap and water. The belt should be replaced if the webbing becomes frayed, contaminated or damaged.

No modifications or additions should be made by the user which will either prevent the seatbelt adjusting devices from operating to remove slack, or prevent the seatbelt assembly from being adjusted to remove slack.

Seatbelts are designed to be used by adult sized occupants.

The driver and front passenger seatbelt systems are fitted with a seatbelt pretensioner. Seatbelt pretensioners have a lower deployment threshold than the airbags. During minor collisions, it is possible that only the seatbelt pretensioners will deploy.

Status after a collision

WARNINGS

Seatbelts subjected to strain, as a result of an accident, should be renewed and the anchorages checked by a properly trained technician.

If a seatbelt pretensioner has been deployed, the seatbelt must be renewed.

The seatbelt pretensioners at the front seating positions are designed to tighten the seatbelts when activated. In frontal and near-frontal crashes, the seatbelt pretensioners may be activated alone or, if the crash is of sufficient severity, together with the front airbags. The pretensioners also activate when side airbags are deployed.

FASTENING THE SEATBELTS

WARNINGS

Insert the tongue into the buckle until you hear a distinct click. You have not fastened the seatbelt correctly if you do not hear a click.

Make sure that the seatbelts are securely stowed away when not in use and are not outside your vehicle when closing the door.

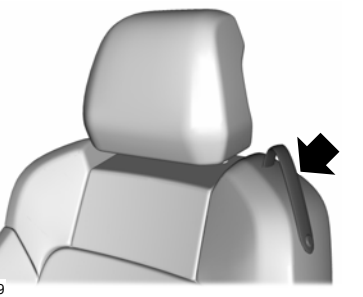
A web guide is included on the outboard side of the front seats. Depending on occupant size and seating position, you may need to route the belt through the guide for a proper fit. If the seatbelt does not route across the middle of the shoulder, route the belt through the web guide.

Convertible



E175860

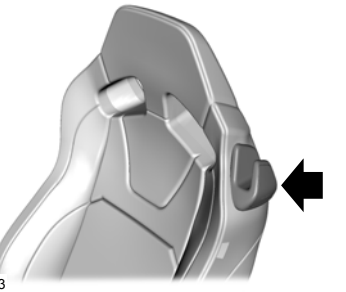
Coupe



E175859

Note: *Unclip the lower end of the web guide from the seatback. Place the seatbelt under the web guide and reattach it to the seatback.*

Recaro (If Equipped)



E175163



E204921

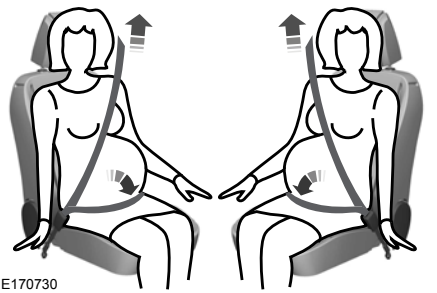
Pull the belt out steadily. It may lock if you pull it sharply or if your vehicle is on a slope.

Press the red button on the buckle to release the belt. Hold the tongue and let it retract completely and smoothly to its stowed position.

Using Seatbelts During Pregnancy

WARNING

Position the seatbelt correctly for your safety and that of your unborn child. Do not use only the lap strap or the shoulder strap.



E170730

Pregnant women should always wear their seatbelt. The lap belt portion of a combination lap and shoulder belt should be positioned low across the hips below the belly and worn as tight as comfort will allow. The shoulder belt should be positioned to cross the middle of the shoulder and the centre of the chest.

SEATBELT REMINDER

WARNING

The system will only provide protection when you use the seatbelt correctly.

The warning lamp illuminates and an audible warning will sound when the following conditions have been met:

- The front seatbelts have not been fastened.
- Your vehicle exceeds a relatively low speed.

It will also illuminate when a front seatbelt is unfastened when your vehicle is moving.

If you do not fasten your seatbelt both the audible and visual warnings will switch off automatically after approximately five minutes.

Switching the Seatbelt Reminder Off

See an authorized dealer.

PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

WARNINGS

Do not fit a non-Ford approved bull bar to your vehicle as this may interfere with the operation of the restraint system, including the air bag deployment, and could result in injury to yourself and others. Fitment of a bull bar may also void the vehicle's compliance with Australian Design Rules.

Do not modify the front of your vehicle in any way. This could adversely affect deployment of the airbags. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

Do not fit any accessories on the front of the vehicle within 150 mm of the centre line of the vehicle as this may interfere with the operation of the front crash sensor.

Normal air flow to the radiator must not be affected when fog lamps, driving lamps or similiar equipment is fitted to the vehicle. Serious mechanical damage will occur.

Wear a seatbelt and keep sufficient distance between yourself and the steering wheel. Only when you use the seatbelt correctly, can it hold you in a position that allows the airbag to achieve its optimum effect. See **Sitting in the Correct Position** (page 86). Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

Repairs to the steering wheel, steering column, seats, airbags and seatbelts must be carried out by an authorized dealer. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

WARNINGS

Keep the areas in front of the airbags free from obstruction. Do not affix anything to or over the airbag covers. In the event of a crash, hard objects could cause serious personal injury or death.

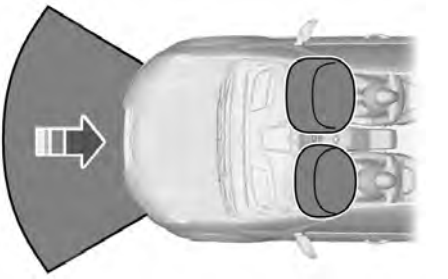
Do not puncture the seat with sharp objects. This could damage and adversely affect deployment of the airbags. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

Use seat covers designed for seats with side airbags. Have these fitted by an authorized dealer. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

Note: *You will hear a loud bang and see a cloud of harmless powdery residue if an airbag deploys. This is normal.*

Note: *Only wipe airbag covers with a damp cloth.*

DRIVER AIRBAG



E74302

The airbag will deploy during significant frontal collisions. The airbag will inflate within a few thousandths of a second and deflate on contact with the occupant, thus cushioning forward body movement. During minor frontal collisions, overturns, rear collisions and side collisions, the airbag will not deploy.

PASSENGER AIRBAG



E151127

The passenger airbag will deploy during significant frontal or near-frontal collisions. The airbag will inflate within a few thousandths of a second and deflate on contact with the occupant, thus cushioning forward body movement. During minor frontal collisions, overturns, rear collisions and side collisions, the front passenger airbag will not deploy.

FRONT PASSENGER SENSING SYSTEM

WARNING

NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.



E212161

WARNINGS

Even with Advanced Restraints Systems, the rear seats are the safest place for children.

Sitting improperly, out of position or with the seatback reclined too far can take weight off the seat cushion and affect the decision of the passenger sensing system, resulting in serious injury or death in the event of a crash. Always sit upright against your seat back, with your feet on the floor.

Do not stow objects in the seatback map pocket or hang objects off a seatback if a child is in the front passenger seat. Do not place objects under the front passenger seat or between the seat and the center console. Check the passenger airbag indicator lamp for proper airbag status. Failure to follow these instructions may interfere with the front passenger seat sensing system and increase the risk of serious injury.

Any alteration or modification to the front passenger seat may affect the performance of the front passenger sensing system. This could seriously increase the risk of injury or death.

This system works with sensors that are part of the front passenger seat and seatbelt to detect the presence of a properly-seated occupant and determine if the front passenger frontal airbag should be enabled (may inflate) or not.



E179527

The front passenger sensing system uses a passenger airbag off indicator which will illuminate and stay lit to remind you that the front passenger frontal airbag is disabled.

The indicator lamp is on the overhead console.

Note: *When the ignition is first turned on, the indicator lamp will illuminate for a short period of time to confirm it is functional.*

The front passenger sensing system is designed to disable (will not inflate) the front passenger frontal airbag when a rear facing infant seat, a forward-facing child restraint, or a booster seat is detected.

WARNING

Even with this technology, NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on the front passenger seat, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.

Even with this technology, parents are **strongly** encouraged to always properly restrain children in the rear seat.

The sensor also turns off the passenger front airbag and seat-mounted side airbag when the passenger seat is empty.

- When the front passenger sensing system disables (will not inflate) the front passenger frontal airbag, the indicator lamp will illuminate and stay lit to remind you that the front passenger frontal airbag is disabled.
- If the child restraint has been installed and the indicator lamp is not lit, then turn the vehicle off, remove the child restraint from the vehicle and reinstall the restraint following the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.

The front passenger sensing system is designed to enable (may inflate) the front passenger frontal airbag anytime the system senses that a person of adult size is sitting properly in the front passenger seat.

- When the front passenger sensing system enables the front passenger frontal airbag (may inflate), the indicator lamp will be unlit and stay unlit.
- If a person of adult size is sitting in the front passenger seat, but the airbag off indicator lamp is lit, it is possible that the person is not sitting properly in the seat. If this happens:
- Turn the vehicle off and ask the person to place the seat back in the full upright position.
- Have the person sit upright in the seat, centered on the seat cushion, with the person's legs comfortably extended.
- Restart the vehicle and have the person remain in this position for about two minutes. This will allow the system to detect that person and enable the passenger's frontal airbag.
- If the indicator lamp remains lit even after this, the person should be advised to ride in the rear seat.

Occupant detected	Passenger airbag OFF indicator	Passenger airbag
Empty	Unlit	Disabled
Child	Lit	Disabled
Adult	Unlit	Enabled

Note: *When the front passenger airbag off light is illuminated, the passenger (seat mounted) side airbag may be disabled to avoid the risk of airbag deployment injuries.*

After all occupants have adjusted their seats and put on seatbelts, it is very important that they continue to sit properly. A properly seated occupant sits upright, leaning against the seat back, and centered on the seat cushion, with their feet comfortably extended on the floor. Sitting improperly can increase the chance of injury in a crash event. For example, if an occupant slouches, lies down, turns sideways, sits forward, leans forward or sideways, or puts one or both feet up, the chance of injury during a crash is greatly increased.

If you think that the status of the passenger airbag off indicator lamp is incorrect, check for the following:

- Objects lodged underneath the seat.
- Objects between the seat cushion and the center console.
- Objects hanging off the seatback.
- Objects stowed in the seatback map pocket.
- Objects placed on the occupant's lap.
- Cargo interference with the seat.
- Other passengers pushing or pulling on the seat.
- Rear passenger feet and knees resting or pushing on the seat.

The conditions listed above may cause the weight of a properly seated occupant to be incorrectly interpreted by the front passenger sensing system. The person in the front passenger seat may appear heavier or lighter due to the conditions described in the list above.



Make sure the front passenger sensing system is operating properly. See **Crash Sensors and Airbag Indicator** (page 24).

If the airbag readiness light is lit, do the following:

The driver and adult passengers should check for objects lodged underneath the front passenger seat, or cargo interfering with the seat.

If there are lodged objects, or cargo is interfering with the seat, take the following steps to remove the obstruction:

- Pull the vehicle over.
- Turn the vehicle off.
- Driver and adult passengers should check for any objects lodged underneath the front passenger seat or cargo interfering with the seat.
- Remove the obstruction(s) (if found).
- Restart the vehicle.

- Wait at least two minutes and verify that the airbag readiness light is no longer illuminated.
- If the airbag readiness light remains illuminated, this may or may not be a problem due to the front passenger sensing system.

Do not attempt to repair or service the system. Take your vehicle immediately to an authorized dealer.

SIDE AIRBAGS

WARNING

Use seat covers designed for seats with side airbags. Have these fitted by an authorized dealer.

Coupe



E152533

Convertible



E174777

The airbags are located inside the seatback of the front seats. There is a label attached to the side of the seatback to indicate this.

DRIVER AND PASSENGER KNEE AIRBAGS

WARNINGS

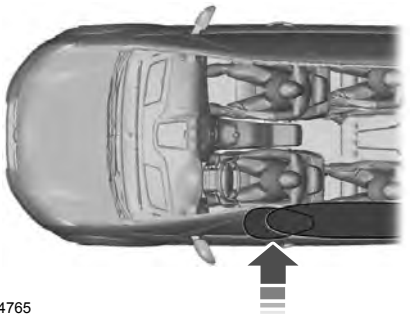
Keep the glove box door closed while driving for optimal performance of the passenger knee airbag during a crash.

To reduce risk of injury, do not obstruct or place objects in the deployment path of the knee airbag.

A driver knee airbag is located under or within the instrument panel. A passenger knee airbag is located within the glove box door. During a crash, the restraints control module may activate the driver and passenger knee airbags based on crash severity and occupant conditions. Under certain crash and occupant conditions, the driver and passenger knee airbag may deploy but the driver front airbag may not activate. As with front and side airbags, it is important to be properly seated and restrained to reduce the risk of death or serious injury.

Make sure the knee airbags are operating properly. See **Crash Sensors and Airbag Indicator** (page 24).

SIDE CURTAIN AIRBAGS - COUPE



E204765

The airbags are located over the front and rear side windows.

The airbags will deploy during significant side crashes or when a certain likelihood of a rollover event is detected by the rollover sensor. The side curtain airbags may deploy in significant frontal angled crashes.

CRASH SENSORS AND AIRBAG INDICATOR

WARNING

Modifying or adding equipment to the front end of the vehicle (including hood, frame, bumper system, front end body structure, tow hooks and hood pins) may affect the performance of the airbag system and deployable hood system, increasing the risk of injury. Do not modify the front end of the vehicle.

Your vehicle has a collection of crash, occupant and pedestrian sensors which provide information to the restraints control module. The restraints control module deploys (activates) the front seatbelt pretensioners, driver airbag, passenger airbag, knee airbag(s), seat mounted side airbags, side curtain airbags and deployable hood system (for pedestrian protection). Based on the type of crash (frontal impact, side impact, rollover or pedestrian impact), the restraints control module will deploy the appropriate safety devices.

The restraints control module also monitors the readiness of the above safety devices plus the crash, occupant and pedestrian sensors. The readiness of the safety system is indicated by a warning indicator light in the instrument cluster or by a backup tone if the warning light is not working. Routine maintenance of the airbags and deployable hood system is not required.

A difficulty with the system is indicated by one or more of the following:

The readiness light will not illuminate immediately after the ignition is turned on.

- The readiness light will either flash or stay lit.
- A series of five beeps will be heard. The tone pattern will repeat periodically until the problem, the light or both are repaired.

If any of these things happen, even intermittently, have the supplemental restraint system and deployable hood system serviced at an authorized dealer immediately. Unless serviced, the system may not function properly in the event of a crash.

The seatbelt pretensioners and the front airbag supplemental restraint system are designed to activate when the vehicle sustains frontal deceleration sufficient to cause the restraints control module to deploy a safety device.

The fact that the seatbelt pretensioners or front airbags did not activate for both front seat occupants in a crash, or the deployable hood system did not activate in a pedestrian crash does not mean that something is wrong with the system. Rather, it means the restraints control module determined the accident conditions (crash severity, belt usage) were not appropriate to activate these safety devices.

- The design of the front airbags is to activate only in frontal and near-frontal crashes (not rollovers, side impacts or rear impacts unless the crash causes sufficient frontal deceleration).
- The seatbelt pretensioners are designed to activate in frontal, near-frontal and side crashes.
- The knee airbag(s) may deploy based on crash severity and occupant conditions.
- The design of the side airbags is to inflate in certain side crashes. The design of the side curtain airbags is to inflate in certain side impact crashes and when a certain likelihood of rollover is detected by the rollover sensor. Side airbags and the side curtain airbags may activate in other types of crashes if the vehicle experiences sufficient sideways motion or deformation, or rollover likelihood.
- The deployable hood system is designed to activate in a pedestrian impact between the speeds of about 20 km/h and 50 km/h. Events similar to a pedestrian impact may deploy the hood system. See **Pedestrian Protection** (page 26).

PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

WARNINGS

Do not drive your vehicle if the hood has been deployed.

Do not place your hand or objects or mount equipment on or near the hood lifters that may come into contact with a deploying hood lifter. Failure to follow these instructions may cause serious injury during a deployment.

Do not attempt to service, repair or modify the hood lifters as you could be seriously injured or killed. Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

Do not attempt to service, repair or modify the hood hinges as you could compromise the deployable hood system. Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

If the deployable hood system has deployed, the system will not function again. The deployable hood system including the hood, hinges, hood lifters, bumper system and crash sensors must be inspected and serviced by an authorized dealer.

Modifying or adding equipment to the front end of your vehicle (including hood, bumper system, frame, front end body structure, tow hooks and hood pins) may affect the performance of the deployable hood system, increasing the risk of injury. Do not modify or add equipment to the front end of your vehicle.

Your vehicle has an enhanced pedestrian protection system in the event of a pedestrian impact. The bumper includes energy absorbing material in its construction, and sensors that can detect a pedestrian impact and trigger a deployable hood system.

Deployable Hood System


E94698

The system releases the hood hinges and raises the rear edge of the hood by about 100 mm. This increases the gap between the hood and the components within the engine compartment to provide additional cushioning in case the pedestrian makes contact with the hood.

The deployable hood system consists of:

- Hood.
- Hood hinges.
- Hood lifters located near the hood hinges.
- Crash sensors and monitoring system with readiness indicator. See **Crash Sensors and Airbag Indicator** (page 24).
- Deployable hood system caution labels placed under the hood near the hood lifters to show their location for service and emergency personnel.



E199514

These labels show the location of the hood lifters for service and emergency personnel.

The deployable hood system is active only when you switch the ignition on and drive the vehicle between the speeds of about 20 km/h and 50 km/h.

After Deployment

After an impact that has activated the deployable hood system, the deployable hood system raises and remains permanently attached to the vehicle, by the hood hinges and latch. Do not drive the vehicle when the hood has been deployed. If the deployable hood system has been activated, stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so, and transport the vehicle to the nearest authorized dealer.

If the readiness lamp lights and stays on, transport the vehicle to the nearest authorized dealer.

You can open the hood using the hood latch after the deployable hood has been triggered. Make sure the hood is securely closed and latched before transporting the vehicle to the nearest authorized dealer.

Deployable Hood Monitoring System

The deployable hood system does not require routine maintenance.

If a fault is detected in the system, the monitoring system turns on the readiness indicator in the instrument cluster.

If the readiness lamp is lit, do the following:

Do not attempt to repair or service the system. Take your vehicle immediately to an authorized dealer.

If the deployable hood system activates, we recommend that these parts be replaced:

- The hood.
- Hood hinges.
- Hood lifters.

An authorized dealer should inspect these parts and replace if necessary:

- Crash sensors.
- Bumper and energy absorbing material.

Hood Lifter Disposal

Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible. Qualified personnel must dispose the hood lifters.

GENERAL INFORMATION ON RADIO FREQUENCIES

Note: *Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.*

The typical operating range for your transmitter is approximately 10 m.

A decrease in operating range could be caused by:

- weather conditions
- nearby radio towers
- structures around your vehicle
- other vehicles parked next to your vehicle.

The radio frequency used by your remote control can also be used by other radio transmitters, for example amateur radios, medical equipment, wireless headphones, wireless remote controls, cell phones, battery chargers and alarm systems. If the frequencies are jammed, you will not be able to use your remote control. You can lock and unlock the doors with the key.

Note: *Make sure your vehicle is locked before leaving it unattended.*

Note: *If you are in range, the remote control will operate if you press any button unintentionally.*

Note: *The remote control contains sensitive electrical components. Exposure to moisture or impact may cause permanent damage.*

REMOTE CONTROL

Intelligent Access Key



E186183

Your intelligent access keys operate the power locks. The key must be in your vehicle to use the push button start.

Removable Key Blade

The intelligent access key also contains a removable key blade that you can use to unlock your vehicle.



E151796

Slide the release on the back of the remote control and pivot the cover off to access the key blade.



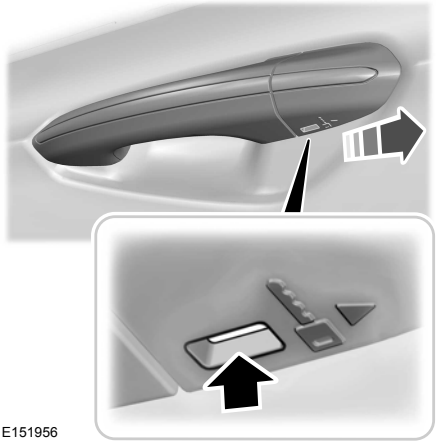
E151795

Note: *Your vehicle keys came with a security label that provides important key cut information. Keep the label in a safe place for future reference.*

Using the Key Blade

The key cylinder is under a cap on the driver door handle.

To remove the cap:



E151956

1. Insert the key blade into the slot on the bottom of the handle and press up.
2. While maintaining upward pressure, move the cap rearward to release it. Gently remove the key while doing so.

To install the cap:



E151957

1. Place the cap just forward of the key cylinder.
2. While applying pressure to the cap, move it forward until it is in place. You may hear a snap as it engages.

Make sure you have correctly installed the cap by trying to move it rearward.

Changing the Remote Control Battery

Note: *Refer to local regulations when disposing of transmitter batteries.*

Note: *Do not wipe off any grease on the battery terminals or on the back surface of the circuit board.*

Note: *Replacing the battery does not erase the programmed key from your vehicle. The transmitter should operate normally.*

A message appears in the information display when the remote control battery is low. See **Information Messages** (page 70).

Intelligent Access Key

The remote control uses two coin-type three-volt lithium batteries CR2025 or equivalent.



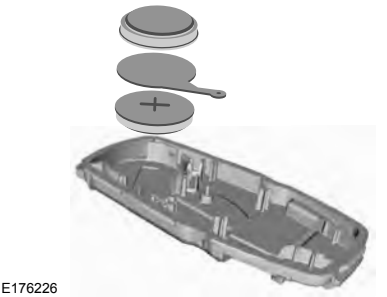
E151796

1. Slide the release on the back of the remote control and pivot the cover off.



E153890

2. Insert a coin into the slot and twist to separate the housing.



E176226

3. Remove the batteries.
4. Install new batteries with the + facing each other.

Note: *Make sure to replace the label between the two batteries.*

5. Reinstall the battery cover.

Memory Feature (If Equipped)

You can use the remote control to recall memory positions. If programmed to a pre-set position, the remote control recalls memory positions when you unlock your vehicle.

REPLACING A LOST KEY OR REMOTE CONTROL

You can purchase replacement keys or remote controls from an authorized dealer. Authorized dealers can program remote controls for your vehicle. See **Replacing a Lost Key or Remote Control** (page 30).

To re-program the passive anti-theft system see an authorized dealer.

PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

MyKey allows you to program keys with restricted driving modes to promote good driving habits. All but one of the keys programmed to the vehicle can be activated with these restricted modes.

Any keys that have not been programmed are referred to as administrator keys or admin keys. These can be used to:

- Create a MyKey.
- Program configurable MyKey settings.
- Clear all MyKey features.

When you have programmed a MyKey, you can access the following information using the information display:

- How many admin keys and MyKeys are programmed to your vehicle.
- The total distance your vehicle has traveled using a MyKey.

Note: *All MyKeys are programmed to the same settings. You cannot program them individually.*

Note: *For vehicles with intelligent access with push-button start, when both a MyKey and an admin intelligent access key fob are present, the admin fob will be recognized by the vehicle while switching the ignition on to start the vehicle.*

Non-configurable Settings

The following settings cannot be changed by an admin key user:

- Seatbelt reminder. You cannot disable this feature. The audio system will mute when the front seat occupants' seatbelts are not fastened.
- Early low fuel. The low-fuel warning activates earlier, giving the MyKey user more time to refuel.
- Driver assist features, if equipped on your vehicle, are forced on: rear parking aid, blind spot information system, cross traffic alert, lane departure warning, forward collision warning system and restricted touchscreen operation in some markets.
- Track Mode, if your vehicle is equipped with this feature, is restricted.
- Satellite radio adult content restrictions, if this feature is available in your market.

Note: *You may be able to temporarily disable the lane departure warning feature. This feature is automatically enabled with every new key cycle.*

Configurable Settings

With an admin key, you can configure certain MyKey settings when you first create a MyKey and before you recycle the key or restart the vehicle. You can also change the settings afterward with an admin key.

- A vehicle speed limit can be set. Warnings will be shown in the display followed by an audible tone when your vehicle reaches the set speed. You cannot override the set speed by fully depressing the accelerator pedal or by setting cruise control.

WARNING

Do not set MyKey maximum speed limit to a limit that will prevent the driver from maintaining a safe speed considering posted speed limits and prevailing road conditions. The driver is always responsible to drive in accordance with local laws and prevailing conditions. Failure to do so could result in accident or injury.

- Various vehicle speed minders can be set. Once you select a speed, it will be shown in the display, followed by an audible tone when the preselected vehicle speed is exceeded.
- Audio system maximum volume of 45%. A message will be shown in the display when you attempt to exceed the limited volume. Also, the speed-sensitive or compensated automatic volume control will be disabled.
- Always on setting. When this is selected, you will not be able to turn off traction control, emergency assist, do not disturb (if your vehicle is equipped with these features), and Sport Mode will not be available to MyKey drivers.

CREATING A MYKEY

Use the information display to create a MyKey:

1. Insert the key you want to program into the ignition. If your vehicle is equipped with a push-button start, place the remote control into the backup position. The location of your backup position is in another chapter. See **Starting a Gasoline Engine** (page 95).
2. Switch the ignition on.
3. Access the main menu on the information display controls. Use the arrow keys to get to the following menu selections:

Message	Action and Description
Settings	Press the **OK** button or the right arrow key.
MyKey	Press the **OK** button or the right arrow key.
Create MyKey	Press the **OK** button or the right arrow key.

When prompted, hold the **OK** button until you see a message informing you to label this key as a MyKey. The key will be restricted at the next start.

MyKey is successfully created. Make sure you label it so you can distinguish it from the admin keys.

You can also program configurable settings for the key(s). See **Programming/Changing Configurable Settings**.

Programming/Changing Configurable Settings

Use the information display to access your configurable MyKey settings.

1. Switch the ignition on using an admin key or remote control.
2. Access the main menu on the information display controls. Use the arrow keys to get to the following menu selections:

Message	Action and Description
Settings	Press the **OK** button or the right arrow key.
MyKey	Press the **OK** button or the right arrow key.

Note: *You can clear or change your MyKey settings at any time during the same key cycle as you created the MyKey. Once you have switched the vehicle off, however, you will need an admin key to change or clear your MyKey settings.*

CLEARING ALL MYKEYS

You can clear or change your MyKey settings using the information display control on the steering wheel. See **Information Displays** (page 63).

Switch the ignition on using an admin key.

To clear all MyKeys of all MyKey settings, press the left arrow button to access the main menu and scroll to:

Message	Action and Description
Settings	Press the **OK** button.
MyKey	Press the **OK** button.
Clear MyKey	Press and hold the **OK** button until the following message displays.
All MyKeys Cleared	

Note: *When you clear your MyKeys, you remove all restrictions and return all MyKeys to their original admin key status.*

CHECKING MYKEY SYSTEM STATUS

You can find information on programmed MyKey(s) using the information display control on the steering wheel. See **Information Displays** (page 63).

To find information on programmed MyKey(s), press the left arrow button to access the main menu and scroll to:

Message	Description
Settings	Press the **OK** button.
MyKey	Press the **OK** button.
Select one of the following:	
MyKey Dist.	Tracks the distance when drivers use a MyKey. The only way to delete the accumulated distance is by using an admin key to clear your MyKeys. If the distance does not accumulate as expected, then the intended user is not using the MyKey, or an admin key user recently cleared and then recreated a MyKey.
{0} MyKeys	Indicates the number of MyKeys programmed to your vehicle. Use this feature to detect how many MyKeys you have for your vehicle and determine when a MyKey has been deleted.
{0} Admin Keys	Indicates how many admin keys are programmed to your vehicle. Use this feature to determine how many unrestricted keys you have for your vehicle, and detect if an additional MyKey has been programmed.

USING MYKEY WITH REMOTE START SYSTEMS

MyKey is not compatible with non Ford-approved, aftermarket remote start systems. If you choose to install a remote start system, see an authorized dealer for a Ford-approved remote start system.

MYKEY TROUBLESHOOTING

Condition	Potential Causes
I cannot create a MyKey.	• The key or transmitter used to start the vehicle does not have admin privileges. • The key or transmitter used to start the vehicle is the only admin key (there always has to be at least one admin key). • Vehicles with keyless start: The keyless start transmitter is not placed in the backup position. See **Starting and Stopping the Engine** (page 94). • SecuriLock passive anti-theft system is disabled.
I cannot program the configurable settings.	• The key or transmitter used to start your vehicle does not have admin privileges. • No MyKeys are created. See **Creating a MyKey** (page 32).
I cannot clear the MyKeys.	• The key or transmitter used to start your vehicle does not have admin privileges. • No MyKeys are created. See **Creating a MyKey** (page 32).
I lost the only admin key.	Purchase a new key from an authorized dealer.
I lost a key.	Contact an authorized dealer.
MyKey distances do not accumulate.	• The MyKey user is not using the MyKey. • An admin key holder cleared the MyKeys and created new MyKeys. • The key system has been reset.
No MyKey functions with the keyless entry transmitter.	• An admin transmitter is present at vehicle start. • No MyKeys are created. See **Creating a MyKey** (page 32).

LOCKING AND UNLOCKING

You can use the power door lock control or the remote control to lock and unlock your vehicle.

Power Door Locks

The power door lock control is on the driver and front passenger door panels.



E180791

A Unlock.
B Lock.

Door Lock Indicator

An LED on each door window trim illuminates when you lock the door. It remains on for up to 10 minutes after you switch the ignition off.

Door Lock Switch Inhibitor

When you electronically lock your vehicle, the power door lock switch no longer operates after 20 seconds. You must unlock your vehicle with the remote control, or switch the ignition on to restore function to these switches. You can switch this feature on or off in the information display. See **General Information** (page 63).

Remote Control

You can use the remote control at any time.

Note: *The luggage compartment release button only works when your vehicle speed is less than 8 km/h.*

Unlocking the Doors



Press the button to unlock all doors. The direction indicators will flash.

Note: *The driver door can be unlocked with the key if the remote control is not functioning.*

Note: *When you leave your vehicle unattended for several weeks, the remote control turns off. Your vehicle must be unlocked and the engine started using the key. Unlocking and starting your vehicle once enables the remote control.*

Reprogramming the Unlocking Function

You can reprogram the unlocking function so that only the driver door is unlocked.

Press and hold both the lock and unlock buttons on the remote control for three seconds to change between driver door or all doors unlock mode. The direction indicators will flash twice to indicate a change to the unlocking mode. Driver door unlock mode only unlocks the driver door when you press the unlock button once. All door unlock mode unlocks all doors when you press the unlock button once. The unlocking mode applies to the remote control. You can also change between the unlocking modes using the information display. See **General Information** (page 63).

Locking the Doors



Press the button to lock all doors. The direction indicators will flash.

Note: *If any door or the luggage compartment is open, or if the hood is open on vehicles that have an anti-theft alarm or remote start, the direction indicators will not flash.*

Double Locking the Doors

WARNING

Do not use double locking when passengers or animals are inside your vehicle. The doors cannot be unlocked or opened from the inside when double locked.

Double locking is a theft protection feature that prevents someone from opening the doors from the inside. It will only operate if all of the doors are fully closed.

Press the button twice within three seconds.

Auto Relock

The doors automatically relock if you do not open a door within 45 seconds of unlocking the doors with the remote control. The door locks and the alarm return to their previous state. You can switch this feature on or off in the information display. See **General Information** (page 63).

Locking and Unlocking the Doors From Inside

Use the power door lock control located on the driver and front passenger door panels.

Locking and Unlocking the Doors with the Key Blade

Locking the Doors


E180643

If the central locking function does not operate, lock the doors individually using the key in the position shown.

Left-Hand Side

Turn clockwise to lock.

Right-Hand Side

Turn counterclockwise to lock.

Unlocking the Doors

If the central locking function does not operate, unlock the driver door and then unlock all other doors individually by pulling the interior door handles.

Note: *If the doors have been unlocked using this method, the doors must be locked individually until the central locking function has been repaired.*

Unlocking the Luggage Compartment (Convertible Only)


E188353

If the power luggage compartment decklid does not operate because the battery has no charge, do the following:

1. Pull the left-hand side rear seat backrest cushion aside.
2. Insert the key blade into the key slot.
3. Turn the key to release the luggage compartment.

Opening the Luggage Compartment

From Inside Your Vehicle


E188015

Press the button on the instrument panel to open the luggage compartment.

From Outside Your Vehicle


E175208

Press the release button above the license plate to unlatch the luggage compartment. Your vehicle must be unlocked or have an intelligent access key within 1 m of the luggage compartment.

With the Remote Control



Press twice within three seconds to open the luggage compartment.

KEYLESS ENTRY

General Information

The system will not function if:

- Your vehicle battery has no charge.
- The key battery has no charge.
- The passive key frequencies are jammed.

Note: *If the system does not function, use the key blade to lock and unlock your vehicle. See* ***Remote Control*** *(page 28).*

The system allows you to unlock, operate and lock your vehicle without using a key or remote control.



E78276

Passive locking and unlocking requires a valid passive key to be located within one of the three external detection ranges. These are located approximately 1.5 m from the front door handles and the luggage compartment.

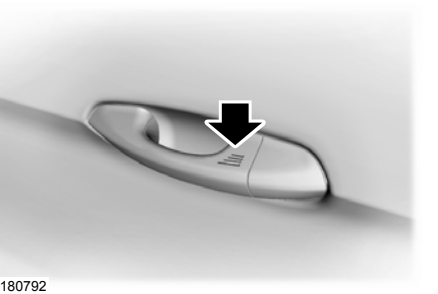
Note: *The system may not function if the passive key is close to metal objects or electronic devices, for example keys or a cell phone.*

Passive Key

Your vehicle can be locked and unlocked using the passive key. You can also use the passive key as a remote control to lock and unlock your vehicle. See **Locking and Unlocking** (page 36).

Locking Your Vehicle

Note: *Your vehicle does not automatically lock. If you do not touch a locking sensor your vehicle will remain unlocked.*



E180792

Touch the top of the door handle to lock your vehicle. There is a brief delay before you can unlock your vehicle again.

Note: *Keep the door handle clean to make sure the system operates correctly.*

Note: *Your vehicle will remain locked for approximately one second. When the delay period is over, you can open the doors again, provided the passive key is within the respective detection range.*

When you lock your vehicle, the direction indicators will flash twice to confirm your vehicle has locked and the alarm is armed.

Unlocking Your Vehicle

Pull an exterior door handle to unlock and open the door. Do not touch the lock sensor on the front of the handle.

Note: *A passive key must be located within the detection range.*

When you unlock your vehicle, the direction indicators will flash once to confirm your vehicle has unlocked and the alarm has disarmed.

Unlocking Only the Driver Door

You can program the system so that only the driver door is unlocked. See **Locking and Unlocking** (page 36).

If the unlocking function is reprogrammed so that only the driver door is unlocked the following will occur:

- If the driver door is the first door opened, the passenger door will remain locked. The passenger door can be unlocked from inside your vehicle by pressing the unlock button located on the driver and passenger door panels. You can unlock the doors individually by pulling the interior door handle on those doors.
- If the passenger door is the first door opened, the driver door will also unlock.

At the Luggage Compartment



E175208

Press the exterior release button hidden above the license plate.

Note: *A passive key must be located within the detection range.*

Disabled Passive Keys

Passive keys left inside your vehicle when locked are disabled.

You cannot use a disabled passive key to switch the ignition on.

You must enable all passive keys again to use them. To enable all your passive keys, unlock your vehicle using a valid passive key. You will reactivate disabled passive keys when you switch the ignition on using a valid key.

Note: *You can still start your vehicle when the passive key is in the back-up position. See* ***Keyless Starting*** *(page 94).*

Locking and Unlocking the Doors with the Key Blade



E151796

Slide the release on the back of the remote control and pivot the cover off to access the key blade. See **Remote Control** (page 28).

Note: *Only the driver door handle has a lock cylinder.*

PASSIVE ANTI-THEFT SYSTEM

Principle of Operation

The system prevents someone from starting the engine with an incorrectly coded key.

Note: *Do not leave correctly coded keys in the vehicle. Always take your keys and lock all doors when leaving the vehicle.*

Coded Keys

If you lose a key, you can obtain a replacement from an authorized dealer. If possible, provide them with the key number from the tag provided with the original keys. You can also obtain extra keys from an authorized dealer.

Note: *Have all of your remaining keys erased and recoded if you lose a key. Have replacement keys coded together with recoding your remaining keys. See an authorized dealer for further information.*

Note: *Do not shield your keys with metal objects. This may prevent the receiver from recognizing a coded key.*

Arming the Engine Immobilizer

When you switch the ignition off the engine immobilizer will arm automatically after a short time.

Disarming the Engine Immobilizer

When you switch the ignition on the engine immobilizer will disarm automatically if a correctly coded key is used.

If you are unable to start your vehicle with a correctly coded key, have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.

ANTI-THEFT ALARM - VEHICLES WITH: PERIMETER ALARM

The perimeter alarm is a deterrent against unauthorized access to your vehicle through the doors and the hood. It also protects the audio unit.

If the alarm is triggered, the alarm horn will sound and the hazard warning flasher will flash.

Take all remote controls to an authorized dealer if there is any potential alarm problem with your vehicle.

Arming the Alarm

To arm the alarm, lock your vehicle. See **Doors and Locks** (page 36).

Disarming the Alarm

Disarm and silence the alarm by unlocking the doors and switching your vehicle on or unlocking the doors with the remote control.

Note: *A valid passive key must be located within the detection range of that door for keyless entry. See **Keyless Entry** (page 38).*

ANTI-THEFT ALARM - VEHICLES WITH: INTERIOR SENSOR

Alarm System

WARNING

Do not arm the alarm with full guard if passengers, animals or other moving objects are inside your vehicle.

Perimeter Alarm

The perimeter alarm is a deterrent against unauthorized access to your vehicle through the doors and the hood. It also protects the audio unit.

Interior Sensors

The interior lamp unit sensors are located in the overhead console.

Note: *Do not cover up the interior lamp unit sensors.*

The sensors act as a deterrent against unauthorized intrusion by sensing any movement inside your vehicle.

Triggering the Alarm

Once armed, the alarm is triggered in any of the following ways:

- If someone opens a door, the liftgate or the hood without a valid key or remote control.
- If someone removes the audio unit or navigation system.
- If you switch your vehicle on without a correctly coded key.
- If the interior sensors detect movement within your vehicle.

If the alarm is triggered, the alarm horn will sound for 30 seconds and the hazard warning flasher will flash for five minutes.

Any further attempts to perform one of the above will trigger the alarm again.

Full and Reduced Guard

Full Guard

Full guard is the standard setting.

In full guard, the interior sensors are on when you arm the alarm.

Reduced Guard

In reduced guard, the interior sensors are off when you arm the alarm.

Selecting Full or Reduced Guard

You can select full or reduced guard using the information display. See **General Information** (page 63).

Ask on Exit (If Equipped)

You can set the information display to ask you each time which level of guard you wish to set.

Using the information display controls, scroll to:

Message	Action and Description
Settings	Press the **OK** button.
Vehicle settings	Press the **OK** button.
Alarm	Press the **OK** button.
Ask on exit	Press the **OK** button.
Reduced guard	Appears in the information display each time you switch your vehicle off. If you wish to arm the alarm with reduced guard, press the **OK** button when this message appears.

Message	Action and Description
	If you wish to arm the alarm with full guard, leave your vehicle without pressing the **OK** button.

Note: *Selecting reduced guard does not set the alarm permanently to reduced guard. It sets it to reduced guard only for the current locking cycle.*

Arming the Alarm

To arm the alarm, lock your vehicle. See **Doors and Locks** (page 36).

Disarming the Alarm

Disarm and silence the alarm by unlocking the doors and switching your vehicle on or unlocking the doors with the remote control.

Note: *A valid passive key must be located within the detection range of that door for keyless entry. See **Keyless Entry** (page 38).*

ANTI-THEFT ALARM - VEHICLES WITH: INTEGRAL BATTERY

Alarm System

WARNING

Do not arm the alarm with full guard if passengers, animals or other moving objects are inside your vehicle.

Perimeter Alarm

The perimeter alarm is a deterrent against unauthorized access to your vehicle through the doors and the hood.

Interior Sensors

The interior lamp unit sensors are located in the overhead console.

Note: *Do not cover up the interior lamp unit sensors.*

The sensors act as a deterrent against unauthorized access by sensing any movement within your vehicle.

Battery Back-up Sounder

The battery back-up sounder is an additional alarm system, which sounds a siren if your vehicle battery or the battery back-up sounder is disconnected. When you lock your vehicle the system is armed. The sounder has its own battery and will sound an alarm siren even if someone disconnects your vehicle battery or the battery back-up sounder itself.

Triggering the Alarm

Once armed, the alarm is triggered in any of the following ways:

- If someone opens a door, the liftgate or the hood without a valid key or remote control.
- If someone removes the audio or navigation system.
- If you switch your vehicle on without a correctly coded key.
- If the interior sensors detect movement within your vehicle.
- On vehicles with a battery back-up sounder, if someone disconnects your vehicle battery or the battery back-up sounder itself.

If the alarm is triggered, the alarm horn will sound for 30 seconds and the hazard warning flasher will flash for five minutes.

Mustang (CZG) Australia, Vehicles Built From: 02-05-2016, enAUS, First Printing

Any further attempts to perform one of the above sounds the alarm again.

Full and Reduced Guard

Full Guard

Full guard is the standard setting.

In full guard, the interior sensors are on when you arm the alarm.

Reduced Guard

In reduced guard, the interior sensors are off when you arm the alarm.

Selecting Full or Reduced Guard

You can select full or reduced guard using the information display. See **General Information** (page 63).

Ask on Exit (If Equipped)

You can set the information display to ask you each time which level of guard you wish to set.

Using the information display controls, scroll to:

Message	Action and Description
Settings	Press the **OK** button.
Vehicle settings	Press the **OK** button.
Alarm	Press the **OK** button.
Ask on exit	Press the **OK** button.
Reduced	Appears in the information display each time you switch your vehicle off. If you wish to arm the alarm with reduced guard, press the **OK** button when this message appears. If you wish to arm the alarm with full guard, leave your vehicle without pressing the **OK** button.

Note: *Selecting reduced guard does not set the alarm permanently to reduced guard. It sets it to reduced guard only for the current locking cycle.*

Arming the Alarm

To arm the alarm, lock your vehicle. See **Doors and Locks** (page 36).

Disarming the Alarm

Note: *A valid passive key must be located within the detection range of that door for keyless entry. See **Keyless Entry** (page 38).*

Perimeter Alarm

Disarm and silence the alarm by unlocking the doors and switching your vehicle on or unlocking the doors with the remote control.

Category One Alarm

Disarm and silence the alarm by unlocking the doors and switching your vehicle on within 12 seconds or unlocking the doors or the liftgate with the remote control.

ADJUSTING THE STEERING WHEEL

WARNING

Do not adjust the steering wheel when your vehicle is moving.

Note: *Make sure that you sit in the correct position. See* ***Sitting in the Correct Position*** *(page 86).*



E176634

1. Unlock the steering column.
2. Adjust the steering wheel to the desired position.

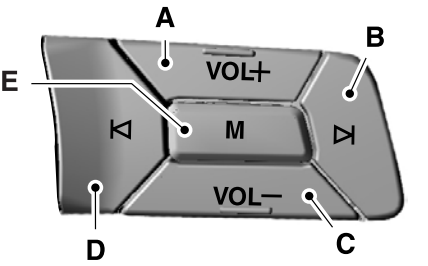


E176635

3. Lock the steering column.

AUDIO CONTROL

You can operate the following functions with the control:



E174583

A	Volume up.
B	Seek up or next.
C	Volume down.
D	Seek down or previous.
E	Media.

MEDIA

Press repeatedly to scroll through available audio sources.

Seek, Next or Previous

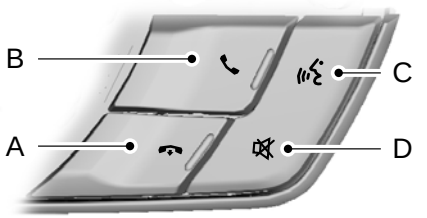
Press the seek button to:

- Tune the radio to the next or previous stored preset.
- Play the next or the previous track.

Press and hold the seek button to:

- Tune the radio to the next station up or down the frequency band.
- Seek or fast forward through a track.

VOICE CONTROL



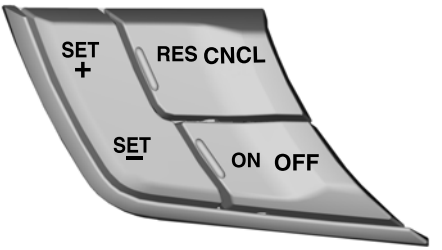
E174584

A End a call.
B Answer a call.
C Voice recognition.
D Mute.

See your SYNC information.

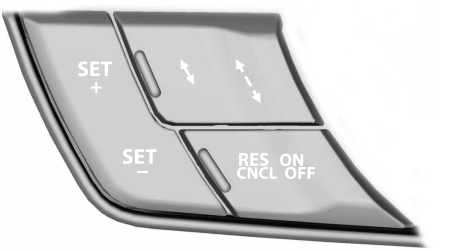
CRUISE CONTROL

Type One



E174594

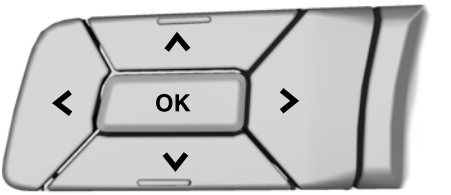
Type Two



E177068

See **Cruise Control** (page 122).

INFORMATION DISPLAY CONTROL



E174595

See **Information Displays** (page 63).

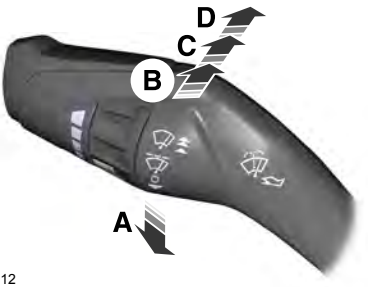
WINDSHIELD WIPERS

Note: *Fully defrost the windshield before switching on the windshield wipers.*

Note: *Make sure you switch off the windshield wipers before entering a car wash.*

Note: *Clean the windshield and wiper blades if they begin to leave streaks or smears. If that does not resolve the issue, install new wiper blades. See* ***Changing the Wiper Blades*** *(page 160).*

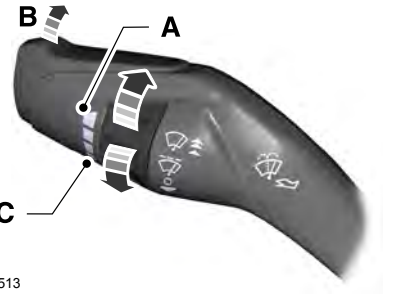
Note: *Do not operate the wipers on a dry windshield. This may scratch the glass, damage the wiper blades or cause the wiper motor to burn out. Always use the windshield washers before wiping a dry windshield.*



E210512

A Single wipe
B Intermittent wipe
C Normal wipe
D High speed wipe

Intermittent Wipe



E210513

A Shortest wipe interval
B Intermittent wipe
C Longest wipe interval

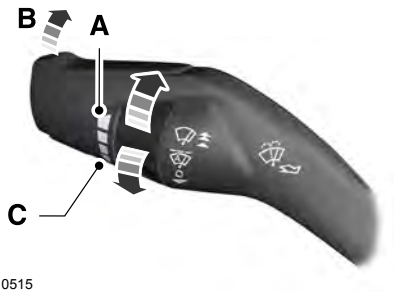
Use the rotary control to adjust the intermittent wipe interval.

Speed Dependent Wipers

When your vehicle speed increases, the interval between wipes decreases.

AUTOWIPERS

The feature uses a rain sensor. You will find it in the area around the interior mirror. The rain sensor monitors the amount of moisture on the windshield and automatically turns on the wipers. It adjusts the wiper speed by the amount of moisture that the sensor detects on the windshield. You can switch this feature on and off in the information display. See **General Information** (page 63).



E210515

A Highest sensitivity
B On
C Lowest sensitivity

Use the rotary control to adjust the sensitivity of the rain sensor. There are six sensitivity settings. When you set the control to low sensitivity (the first position), the wipers turn on when there is a large amount of moisture on the windshield. When you set the control to high sensitivity (the sixth position), the wipers turn on when there is a small amount of moisture on the windshield.

Keep the outside of the windshield clean. The rain sensor is very sensitive. If the area around the mirror is dirty, then the wipers may operate if dirt, mist or insects hit the windshield.

Wet or winter driving conditions with ice, snow or salty road mist can cause inconsistent and unexpected wiping or smearing. You can do the following to help keep your windshield clear:

- Lower the sensitivity of the autowipers to reduce the amount of smearing.
- Switch to normal or high-speed wipe.
- Switch off the autowipers.

Note: *Fully defrost the windshield before switching on the windshield wipers.*

Note: *Make sure you switch off the windshield wipers before entering a car wash.*

Note: *Clean the windshield and wiper blades if they begin to leave streaks or smears. If that does not resolve the issue, install new wiper blades. See* ***Changing the Wiper Blades*** *(page 160).*

Note: *If you switch on the autolamps feature and the autowipers feature, your low-beam headlamps turn on automatically when your windshield wipers operate at a normal wipe speed.*

WINDSHIELD WASHERS

Note: *Do not operate the washers when the washer reservoir is empty. This may cause the washer pump to overheat.*



E210514

To operate the washers and spray the windshield, pull the lever toward you.

GENERAL INFORMATION

Condensation in Lamp Assemblies

Exterior lamps have vents to accommodate normal changes in air pressure.

Condensation can be a natural by-product of this design. When moist air enters the lamp assembly through the vents, there is a possibility that condensation can occur when the temperature is cold. When normal condensation occurs, a fine mist can form on the interior of the lens. The fine mist eventually clears and exits through the vents during normal operation.

Clearing time may take as long as 48 hours under dry weather conditions.

Examples of acceptable condensation are:

- The presence of a fine mist (no streaks, drip marks or large droplets).
- A fine mist covers less than 50% of the lens.

Examples of unacceptable condensation are:

- A water puddle inside the lamp.
- Streaks, drip marks or large droplets present on the interior of the lens.

If you see any unacceptable condensation, have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.

LIGHTING CONTROL



E142449

A Off.

B Parking lamps, instrument panel lamps, license plate lamps and tail lamps.

C Headlamps.

High Beams



E166216

Push the lever away from you to switch the high beam on.

Push the lever forward again or pull the lever toward you to switch the high beams off.

Headlamp Flasher



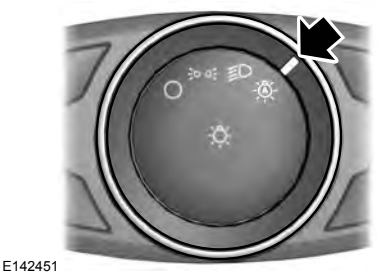
E166217

Slightly pull the lever toward you and release it to flash the headlamps.

AUTOLAMPS (If Equipped)

WARNING

The autolamps switch position may not activate the headlamps in all low visibility conditions, such as daytime fog. Always ensure that your headlamps are switched to auto or on, as appropriate, during all low visibility conditions. Failure to do so may result in a collision.



E142451

When the lighting control is in the autolamps position, the headlamps automatically turn on in low light situations or when the wipers activate.

If equipped, the following also activate when the lighting control is in the autolamps position and you switch them on in the information display:

- Configurable daytime running lamps.
- Automatic high beam control.
- Adaptive headlamp control.

The headlamps remain on for a period of time after you switch the ignition off. Use the information display controls to adjust the period of time that the headlamps remain on. See **Information Displays** (page 63).

Note: *With the headlamps in the autolamps position, you cannot switch the high beam headlamps on until the autolamps system turns the low beam headlamps on.*

Windshield Wiper Activated Headlamps

The windshield wiper activated headlamps turn on within 10 seconds when you switch the windshield wipers on and the lighting control is in the autolamps position. They turn off approximately 60 seconds after you switch the windshield wipers off.

The headlamps will not turn on by wiper activation:

- During a mist wipe.
- When the wipers are on to clear washer fluid during a wash condition.
- If the wipers are in intermittent mode.

Note: *If you switch autolamps and autowipers on, the headlamps will automatically turn on when the windshield wipers continuously operate.*

INSTRUMENT LIGHTING DIMMER

Note: *You disable the manual dimmer when you adjust the setting to Auto Dimming in the information display. See* ***Information Displays*** *(page 63).*

Note: *If you disconnect the battery or it becomes discharged, the illuminated components will switch to the maximum setting.*



E161902

Press repeatedly or press and hold until you reach the desired level.

HEADLAMP EXIT DELAY

After you switch the ignition off, you can switch the headlamps on by pulling the direction indicator lever toward you. You will hear a short tone. The headlamps will switch off automatically after three minutes with any door open or 30 seconds after the last door has been closed. You can cancel this feature by pulling the direction indicator toward you again or switching the ignition on.

DAYTIME RUNNING LAMPS

WARNING

The autolamps switch position may not activate the headlamps in all low visibility conditions, such as daytime fog. Always ensure that your headlamps are switched to auto or on, as appropriate, during all low visibility conditions. Failure to do so may result in a crash.

To switch the system on:

1. Switch the ignition on.
2. Switch the lighting control to the off or autolamp position.

FRONT FOG LAMPS



E132709

Press the control to switch the fog lamps on or off.

You can switch the fog lamps on when the lighting control is in any position except off.

Note: *Only use fog lamps during reduced visibility, for example, fog, snow or heavy rain.*

Note: *If you switch autolamps on, you can only switch the fog lamps on once autolamps has turned the headlamps on.*

REAR FOG LAMPS



E132710

Press the control to switch the fog lamps on or off.

You can only switch the rear fog lamps on when either the front fog lamps or low beam headlamps are on.

Note: *Only use the rear fog lamps when visibility is less than 164 feet (50 meters).*

Note: *Do not use the rear fog lamps when it is raining or snowing.*

Note: *If you switch autolamps on, you can only switch the fog lamps on once autolamps has turned the headlamps on.*

HEADLAMP LEVELING

1. Press to release the pop out button.



E132711

2. Rotate the control to the required setting.
3. Push the button to the closed position.

Adjust the level of the headlamps according to the load you are carrying in your vehicle.

Recommended Headlamp Leveling Switch Positions

Load		Load in luggage compartment	Switch position
Front seats	Second row seats		
1-2	-	-	0
2	2	-	0.5
2	2	Max	1
1	-	Max	1

DIRECTION INDICATORS

Note: *The lever arrangement is lateralized in the vehicles with Lane keeping system.*



E166224

Push the lever up or down to use the direction indicators.

Note: *Tap the lever up or down to make the direction indicators flash three times to indicate a lane change.*

WELCOME LIGHTING (If Equipped)

Mustang Projection Lamps

The lamps are on the bottom of the exterior mirror housings. They will project an image onto the ground a short distance from your vehicle when welcome lighting or lighted entry turns on.

Note: *Moisture, frost and ice build-up or other types of contamination on the surface of the light lens can cause non-permanent distortion or reduced brightness of the image. Do not use abrasive materials to clean the lens.*

Note: *For vehicles with manual transmission, you may need to engage the parking brake for this feature to operate.*

INTERIOR LAMPS

The lamps turn on when:

- You open any door.
- You press a button on the remote control.
- You press a map lamp button.

Map Lamps



E175199

A Left-hand side map lamp.

B Right-hand side map lamp.

You can switch the lamps on individually by pressing the buttons.

AMBIENT LIGHTING (If Equipped)

You can adjust the ambient lighting system in your information display. See **Information Displays** (page 63).

POWER WINDOWS

WARNINGS

Do not leave children unattended in your vehicle and do not let them play with the power windows. They may seriously injure themselves.

When closing the power windows, you should verify they are free of obstructions and make sure that children and pets are not in the proximity of the window openings.



E180087

Note: *You may hear a pulsing noise when just one of the windows is open. Lower the opposite window slightly to reduce this noise.*

Note: *Use the singular control (if equipped) to open both rear windows.*

Press the control to open the window.

Lift the control to close the window.

One-Touch Down

Press the control fully and release it. Press again or lift it to stop the window.

One-Touch Up

Lift the control fully and release it. Press again or lift it to stop the window.

Bounce-Back

The window will automatically stop and reverse some distance if it detects an obstacle while closing.

Overriding the Bounce-Back Feature

WARNING

When you override the bounce-back feature the window will not reverse if it detects an obstacle. Take care when closing the windows to avoid personal injury or damage to your vehicle.

Pull up the window switch and hold within two seconds of the window reaching the bounce-back position. The window will travel up with no bounce-back protection. The window will stop if you release the switch before the window is fully closed.

Accessory Delay

The window switches remain operational for several minutes when you switch the ignition off or until you open either front door.

GLOBAL OPENING

You can use the remote control to operate the windows with the ignition off.

Note: *You can enable or disable this feature in the information display, or see an authorized dealer. See* ***General Information*** *(page 63).*

Note: *To operate this feature, accessory delay must not be active.*

Opening the Windows

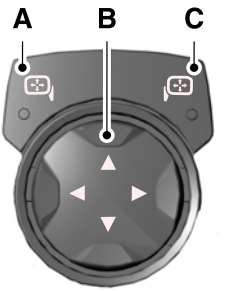
You can open the windows for a short time after you unlock your vehicle with the remote control. After you unlock your vehicle, press and hold the remote control unlock button to open the windows. Release the button once movement starts. Press the lock or unlock button to stop movement.

EXTERIOR MIRRORS

Power Exterior Mirrors

WARNING

Do not adjust the mirrors when your vehicle is moving.



E176804

A Left-hand mirror
B Adjustment control
C Right-hand mirror

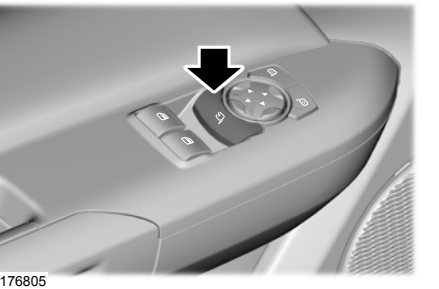
To adjust a mirror:

1. Select the mirror you want to adjust. The control will illuminate.
2. Adjust the position of the mirror.
3. Press the mirror switch again.

Fold-Away Exterior Mirrors

Push the mirror toward the door window glass. Make sure that you fully engage the mirror in its support when returning it to its original position.

Power-Folding Mirrors



E176805

Press the control to fold the mirror toward the door window glass. Press the control again to fold the mirror back out to its original position.

Loose Mirror

If your power-folding mirrors are manually folded, they may not work properly, even after you re-position them. You need to reset them if:

- The mirrors vibrate when you drive.
- The mirrors feel loose.
- The mirrors do not stay in the folded or unfolded position.
- One of the mirrors is not in its normal driving position.

To reset the power-fold feature, use the power-folding mirror control and unfold the mirrors. You may hear a loud noise as your reset the power-folding mirrors. This sound is normal. Repeat this process as needed each time the mirrors are manually folded.

Heated Exterior Mirrors

See **Heated Windows and Mirrors** (page 85).

Signal Indicator Mirrors

The outer portion of the appropriate mirror housing will blink when you switch on the turn signal.

INTERIOR MIRROR

WARNING

Do not adjust the mirror when your vehicle is moving.

Note: *Do not clean the housing or glass of any mirror with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum or ammonia-based cleaning products.*

You can adjust the interior mirror to your preference. In addition to the standard pivot point, this mirror also includes a second pivot point, letting you move the mirror head up or down and from side to side.

Auto-Dimming Mirror

Note: *Do not block the sensors on the front and back of the mirror. Mirror performance may be affected. A rear center passenger or raised rear center head restraint may also block light from reaching the sensor.*

To reduce glare, the mirror dims automatically when it detects bright lights from behind your vehicle. It automatically returns to normal reflection when you select reverse (R) gear to make sure you have a clear view when backing up.

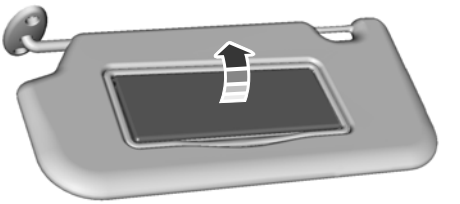
SUN VISORS



E138666

Rotate the sun visor toward the side window and extend it rearward for extra shade.

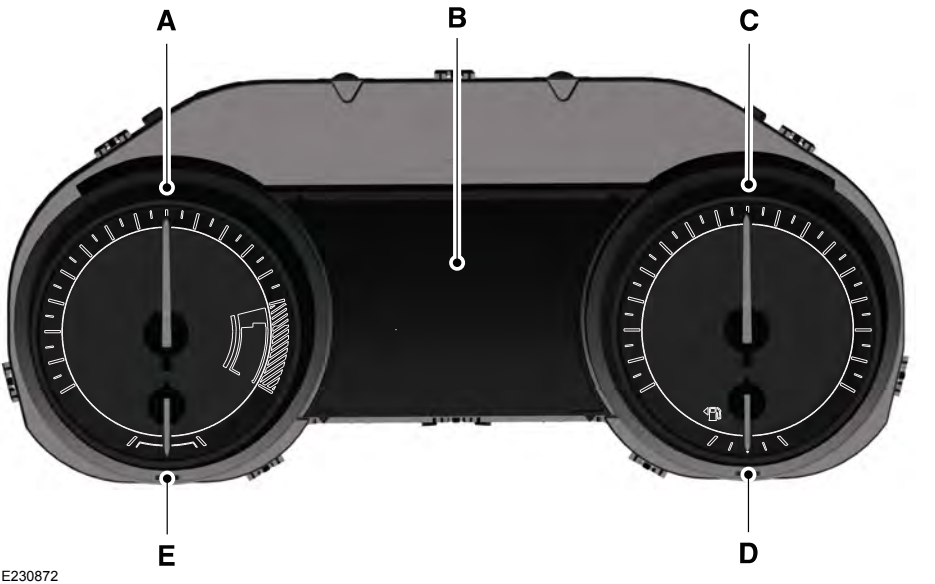
Illuminated Vanity Mirror



E162197

Lift the cover to switch the lamp on.

GAUGES



A Tachometer (Revolutions per minute)
B Information display
C Speedometer (Ground speed)
D Fuel gauge
E Engine coolant temperature gauge

Information Display

Odometer

Located in the bottom of the information display. Registers the accumulated distance your vehicle has traveled.

Trip Computer

See **General Information** (page 63).

Vehicle Settings and Personalization

See **General Information** (page 63).

Fuel Gauge

Note: *The fuel gauge may vary slightly when your vehicle is moving or on a gradient.*

Switch the ignition on. The fuel gauge will indicate approximately how much fuel is left in the fuel tank. The arrow adjacent to the fuel pump symbol indicates on which side of your vehicle the fuel filler door is located.

The needle should move toward F when you refuel your vehicle. If the needle points to E after adding fuel, this indicates your vehicle needs service soon.

After refueling some variability in needle position is normal:

- It may take a short time for the needle to reach F after leaving the gas station. This is normal and depends upon the slope of pavement at the gas station.
- The fuel amount dispensed into the tank is a little less or more than the gauge indicated. This is normal and depends upon the slope of pavement at the gas station.
- If the gas station nozzle shuts off before the tank is full, try a different gas pump nozzle.

Low Fuel Reminder

A low fuel reminder triggers when the distance to empty value reaches 80 km to empty, with additional warnings at 40 km, 20 km and 0 km to empty, provided the message is cleared each time. An additional warning at 120 km to empty is provided when the MyKey is being used.

Variations:

Note: *The low fuel warning and distance-to-empty warning can appear at different fuel gauge positions depending on fuel economy conditions. This variation is normal.*

Driving type (fuel economy conditions)	Distance-to-empty	Fuel gauge position
Highway driving	80 km	1/8th tank
Severe duty driving (trailer towing, extended idle)	80 km	1/4 tank

Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge

WARNING

Never remove the coolant reservoir cap while the engine is running or hot.

Indicates engine coolant temperature. At normal operating temperature, the level indicator will be in the normal range. If the engine coolant temperature exceeds the normal range, stop your vehicle as soon as safely possible, switch off the engine and let it cool.

WARNING LAMPS AND INDICATORS

The following warning lamps and indicators will alert you to a vehicle condition that may become serious. Some lamps will illuminate when you start your vehicle to make sure they work. If any lamps remain on after starting your vehicle, refer to the respective system warning lamp for further information.

Note: *Some warning indicators appear in the information display and function the same as a warning lamp but do not display when you start your vehicle.*

Anti-Lock Braking System



If it illuminates when you are driving, this indicates a malfunction. You will continue to have the normal braking system (without ABS) unless the brake system warning lamp is also illuminated. Have the system checked by your authorized dealer.

Battery



If it illuminates while driving, it indicates a malfunction. Switch off all unnecessary electrical equipment and have the system checked by your authorized dealer immediately.

Bonnet Ajar



It illuminates when the ignition is on and the bonnet is not completely closed.

Boot Ajar



It illuminates when the ignition is on and the boot is not completely closed.

Brake System



It illuminates when you engage the parking brake with the ignition on.

If it illuminates when you are driving, check that the parking brake is not engaged. If the parking brake is not engaged, this indicates low brake fluid level or a brake system malfunction. Have the system checked immediately by your authorized dealer.

WARNING



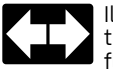
Driving your vehicle with the warning lamp on is dangerous. A significant decrease in braking performance may occur. It will take you longer to stop your vehicle. Have your vehicle checked by your authorized dealer immediately. Driving extended distances with the parking brake engaged can cause brake failure and the risk of personal injury.

Cruise Control



It illuminates when you switch this feature on.

Direction Indicator



Illuminates when the left or right turn signal or the hazard warning flasher is turned on. If the indicators stay on or flash faster, check for a burned out bulb. See **Changing a Bulb** (page 163).

Door Ajar



Displays when the ignition is on and any door is not completely closed.

Engine Coolant Temperature



Illuminates when the engine coolant temperature is high. Stop the vehicle as soon as possible, switch off the engine and let cool. See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 153).

Engine Oil



If it illuminates with the engine running or when you are driving, this indicates a malfunction. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so and switch the engine off. Check the engine oil level. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 153).

Note: *Do not resume your journey if it illuminates despite the level being correct. Have the system checked by your authorized dealer immediately.*

Fasten Seatbelt



It will illuminate and a chime will sound to remind you to fasten your seatbelt. See **Seatbelt Reminder** (page 18).

Front Airbag



If it fails to illuminate when you start your vehicle, continues to flash or remains on, it indicates a malfunction. Have the system checked by your authorized dealer.

Front Fog Lamps



Lights when you switch the front fog lamps on.

High Beam



It will illuminate when you switch the high beam headlamps on. It will flash when you use the headlamp flasher.

Low Beam Malfunction



Lights when there is a malfunction with the low beam headlamp bulb.

Low Fuel Level



It will illuminate when the fuel level is low or the fuel tank is nearly empty. Refuel as soon as possible.

Low Tire Pressure Warning



It will illuminate when your tire pressure is low. If the lamp remains on with the engine running or when driving, check your tire pressures as soon as possible.

It will also illuminate momentarily when you switch the ignition on to confirm the lamp is functional. If it does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, or begins to flash at any time, have the system checked by your authorized dealer.

Parking Lamps



It will illuminate when you switch the parking lamps on.

Rear Fog Lamps Indicator



It will illuminate when you switch the rear fog lamps on.

Service Engine Soon



If the service engine soon indicator light stays illuminated after the engine is started, it indicates that the On Board Diagnostics system (OBD) has detected a malfunction of the vehicle emissions control system. Refer to On board diagnostics (OBD) in the Fuel and Refueling chapter for more information about having your vehicle serviced.

If the light is blinking, engine misfire is occurring which could damage your catalytic converter. Drive in a moderate fashion (avoid heavy acceleration and deceleration) and have your vehicle serviced immediately.

WARNING

Under engine misfire conditions, excessive exhaust temperatures could damage the catalytic converter, the fuel system, interior floor coverings or other vehicle components, possibly causing a fire. Have an authorized dealer service your vehicle immediately.

The service engine soon indicator light illuminates when the ignition is first turned on prior to engine start to check the bulb and to indicate whether the vehicle is ready for Inspection/Maintenance (I/M) testing.

Normally, the service engine soon light will stay on until the engine is cranked, then turn itself off if no malfunctions are present. However, if after 15 seconds the service engine soon light blinks eight times, it means that the vehicle is not ready for I/M testing.

Stability Control



It will flash when the system is active. If it remains illuminated or does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, this indicates a malfunction. During a malfunction the system will switch off. Have the system checked by your authorized dealer immediately. See **Using Stability Control** (page 115).

Stability Control Off



It will illuminate when you switch the system off. It will go out when you switch the system back on or when you switch the ignition off. See **Using Stability Control** (page 115).

AUDIBLE WARNINGS AND INDICATORS

Keyless Warning Alert

The horn will sound twice when you exit your vehicle with the intelligent access key and your vehicle is in ON, indicating your vehicle is still on. The horn will also sound twice when you exit your vehicle and attempt to lock the doors manually while the intelligent access key is still in the vehicle. The doors will not lock if the intelligent access key remains in the vehicle.

Headlamps On Warning Chime

Sounds when you remove the key from the vehicle and you have left the headlamps or parking lamps on.

Parking Brake On Warning Chime

(If Equipped)

Sounds when you have left the parking brake on and drive your vehicle. If the warning chime remains on after you have released the parking brake, have the system checked by your authorized dealer immediately.

GENERAL INFORMATION

WARNING

Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any handheld device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Various systems on your vehicle can be controlled using the information display controls on the steering wheel. Corresponding information is displayed in the information display.

Information Display Controls



E174488

- Press the up and down arrow buttons to scroll through and highlight the options within a menu.
- Press the right arrow button to enter a sub-menu.
- Press the left arrow button to exit a menu.
- Press and hold the left arrow button at any time to return to the main menu display (escape button).
- Press the **OK** button to choose and confirm settings or messages.

Main Menu

Gauge Mode
Trip/Fuel
Track Apps™
Driver Assist
Settings

This icon gives you the ability to switch a feature on or off. A check in the box indicates the feature is enabled, and unchecked indicates the feature is disabled.

Note: *Some options may appear slightly different or not at all if the items are optional.*

Gauge Mode		
Distance to Empty		
Tire Pressure		
Gauge Detail	Air/Fuel Ratio	Virtual gauge shown
	Boost/Vacuum	
	Cylinder Head Temp	
	Inlet Air Temp	
	Oil Pressure	
	Oil Temp	
	Trans Oil Temp	
	Voltage	

Note: *In order to provide real-time values, some gauges may display more value fluctuation than other gauges during normal operation.*

Some gauges shown in standard measure. Metric similar.

Air/Fuel Ratio
Displays the current air to fuel mixture in the engine.



E174490

Boost/Vacuum
Displays the vacuum or boost pressure.



Cylinder Head Temp
Displays the engine's cylinder head temperature.



Inlet Air Temp
Displays the temperature of the air in the cold air inlet tube.



Oil Pressure
Displays the engine oil pressure. If the pressure is consistently too high or very low, contact an authorized dealer.



Oil Temp
Displays the engine oil temperature. If the temperature rises to the red area, stop in a safe place and let your vehicle cool. If the problem persists, see an authorized dealer.



Trans Oil Temp
Displays the transmission fluid operating temperature. If the temperature rises to the red area, stop in a safe place and let the transmission cool. If the problem persists, see an authorized dealer.



E174494

Voltage
Displays your vehicle's battery voltage. If the voltage is consistently too high or very low, contact an authorized dealer.



E174495

Trip/Fuel	
Trip 1 or Trip 2 - Trip timer, Trip distance, km to E and l/100 km	
Fuel Economy	Instant fuel economy
	L/100km
	km to E
Fuel History	Last 30 minutes
	L/100km
	km to E
Average Speed	

Note: *Press and hold **OK** to reset the currently displayed information.*

Menu Item	Description
Trip Timer	Registers the time of individual journeys.
Trip Distance	Registers the mileage of individual journeys.
km to E	Shows the approximate distance our vehicle can travel before running out of fuel.

Menu Item	Description
L/100km	Shows the average fuel usage based on time.
Instant fuel economy	Shows your instantaneous fuel usage.
Fuel History	Shows fuel usage as a bar graph based on time. The graph is updated each minute with the fuel economy that you achieved during 30 minutes of driving.

WARNING

Track Apps is for track use only. Remember that even advanced technology cannot defy the laws of physics. It is always possible to lose control of a vehicle due to inappropriate driver input for the conditions. Aggressive driving on any road condition can cause you to lose control of your vehicle increasing the risk of personal injury or property damage.

Note: *Track Apps are for track use only. They are not to be used under any other driving conditions.*

Note: *Viewed or cleared results cannot be used unless your vehicle is at a complete stop. The right arrow on the display menu will be inactive. If your vehicle does not reach 100 mph (160 km/h) during the track run, your display may not display your 1/4 mile results.*

Note: *The system will disable the collision warning system while using track apps or when you switch off ESC.*

Track Apps™		
Accelerometer	Virtual gauge shown	
Acceleration Timer	Select your speed, distance and start settings	
Brake Performance	Select setting	
Lap Timer	Track (XXX)	
Launch Control	RPM	Select setting
View/Clear Results	Acceleration Timer	
	Brake Performance	
	All Time Best	
	Clear Saved Data	
	Clear All Time Best	
	Clear Accel.	

Accelerometer
Displays your vehicle's rate of acceleration or deceleration.



The red dot will move toward the area of acceleration or deceleration.

- LEFT acceleration or deceleration - When accelerating or decelerating left, the red dot will move to the right on the accelerometer.
- RIGHT acceleration/deceleration - When accelerating or decelerating right, the red dot will move to the left on the accelerometer.

Acceleration Timer
Displays your vehicle's rate of acceleration.

1. Choose desired speed or distance.
2. Choose Automatic Start or Countdown Start.
3. Follow the on-screen prompts.

Brake Performance
Displays your vehicle's rate of deceleration.

1. Choose desired speed to start recording data.
2. Follow the on-screen prompts.

Lap Timer
Gives the driver the ability to record lap times at three separate tracks.

Launch Control
Maximize traction from a standing start.

View/Clear Results
View and clear the last and saved results of the acceleration timer, brake performance and all time best.

Note: *Some items are optional and may not appear.*

Driver Assist
AdvanceTrac
Hill Start Assist
Rear Park Aid
Seatbelts
Tire Monitor

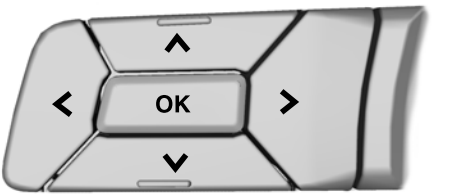
Note: *Some items are optional and may not appear.*

Settings			
Vehicle	Alarm	Ask on Exit	
	Lighting	Autolamp Delay	Select setting
		Daytime Lights	
	Locks	Autounlock	
		Mislock	
		Relock	
		Remote Unlock	Select setting
		Switch Inhibit	
	Oil Life Reset		
	Park Lock Control		
	Remote Start	Climate Control	Select setting
		Seats	
		Duration	
		System	
	Windows	Remote Open	
		Remote Close	
	Wipers	Courtesy Wipe	
		Rain Sensing	
MyColor	Gauge Color	Select color	
	Ambient Light	Ambient Light	
		Ambient Dim	Select setting
		Ambient Color	Select color
	Set MyColor	Set MyColor 1 - 3	

Settings		
MyKey	MyKey Status	Select setting
	Create MyKey	
	911 Assist	
	Advan-ceTrac	
	Do Not Disturb	
	Max Speed	
	Speed Minder	
	Volume Limiter	
	Clear MyKeys	Select setting
Display Setup	Distance	Select setting
	Temperature	
	Tire Pressure	
	Language	

INFORMATION MESSAGES

Note: *Depending on your vehicle options and instrument cluster type, not all of the messages display or are available. The information display may abbreviate or shorten certain messages.*



E174595

Press the **OK** button to acknowledge and remove some messages from the information display. The information display automatically removes other messages after a short time.

You need to confirm certain messages before you can access the menus.

Airbag

Message	Action
Occupant Sensor BLOCKED Remove Objects Near Passenger Seat	The system detects a malfunction due to a blocked sensor. Remove blockage.

Alarm

Message	Action
Vehicle Alarm To Stop Alarm, Start Vehicle.	Alarm triggered due to unauthorized entry. See **Anti-Theft Alarm** (page 43).
Alarm All Sensors Perimeter Sensing	All perimeter sensors are active. See **Anti-Theft Alarm** (page 43).

Battery and Charging System

Message	Action
Check Charging System	The charging system needs servicing. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.
Charging System Service Soon	The charging system needs servicing. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.
Charging System Service Now	The charging system needs servicing. Contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.

Message	Action
Battery State of Charge Low	The battery management system determines that the battery is at a low state of charge. Turn your ignition off as soon as possible to protect the battery. This message clears once you restart your vehicle and the battery state of charge has recovered.
Low Battery Features Temporarily Turned Off	The battery management system detects an extended low-voltage condition. Your vehicle disables various features to help preserve the battery. Turn off as many of the electrical loads as soon as possible to improve system voltage. If the system voltage has recovered, the disabled features operate again as normal.
Turn Power Off To Save Battery	The battery management system determines that the battery is at a low state of charge. Turn your ignition off as soon as possible to protect the battery. This message clears once you restart your vehicle and the battery state of charge has recovered. Turning off unnecessary electrical loads allow faster battery state-of-charge recovery.

Doors and Locks

Message	Action
X door open	The door(s) listed is not completely closed.
Trunk Ajar	The boot is not completely closed.
Hood Ajar	The bonnet is not completely closed.
Switches Inhibited Security Mode	The system has disabled the door switches.

Electronic Stability Control

Message	Action
Service AdvanceTrac	The system detects a malfunction due to a blocked sensor.
ESC Off On	The driver has disabled or enabled the traction control.
AdvanceTrac SPORT MODE	The system is in sport mode.

Engine

Message	Action
Power Reduced to Lower Engine Temp	The engine is overheating and the power has been reduced to assist in lowering the temperature. Stop in a safe place as soon as it is possible.

Fuel

Message	Action
Fuel Level Low	An early reminder of a low fuel condition.
Check Fuel Fill Inlet	The fuel fill inlet may not be properly closed.

Hill Start Assist

Message	Action
Hill Start Assist Not Available	Hill start assist is not available. Contact an authorized dealer. See **Hill Start Assist** (page 111).

Keys and Intelligent Access

Message	Action
To START Press Brake	A reminder to press the brake while starting the vehicle.
To START Press Clutch	A reminder to depress the clutch pedal on manual transmission while starting the vehicle.
No Key Detected	The system does not detect a key in your vehicle. See **Keyless Starting** (page 94).
Restart Now or Key is Needed	You pressed the start/stop button to switch off the engine and your vehicle does not detect your intelligent access key inside your vehicle.
Accessory Power is Active	Your vehicle is in the accessory ignition state.
Starting System Fault	There is a problem with your vehicle's starting system. See an authorized dealer for service.

Message	Action
Key Program Successful	You have successfully programmed an intelligent access key to the system.
Key Program Failure	You have failed to program an intelligent access key to the system.
Max Number of Keys Learned	You have programmed the maximum number of keys to the system.
Not Enough Keys Learned	You have not programmed enough keys to the system.
Key Battery Low Replace Soon	The key battery is low. Change the battery as soon as possible.
Engine ON	Inform the driver that they are exiting the vehicle and the engine is on.

Maintenance

Message	Action
Low Engine Oil Pressure	Stop your vehicle as soon as safely possible and turn off the engine. Check the oil level. If the warning stays on or continues to come on with your engine running, contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.
Change Engine Oil Soon	The engine oil life remaining is 10% or less. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 153).
Oil Change Required	The oil life left is at 0%. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 153).
Brake Fluid Level Low	The brake fluid level is low, inspected the brake system immediately. See **Brake Fluid Check** (page 158).
Check Brake System	The brake system needs servicing. Stop your vehicle in a safe place. Contact an authorized dealer.
Transport / factory mode Contact dealer	Your vehicle is still in Transport or Factory mode. This may not allow some features to operate properly. See an authorized dealer.
See Manual	The powertrain needs service due to a powertrain malfunction.

MyKey

Message	Action
MyKey not Created	You cannot program a MyKey.
MyKey Active Drive Safely	MyKey is active.
Speed limited to XX MPH/km/h	When switching on your vehicle and MyKey is in use, displays that the MyKey speed limit is on.
Near Vehicle Top Speed	MyKey is in use and the MyKey speed limit is on and the vehicle speed is approaching 130 km/h.
Vehicle at Top Speed of MyKey Setting	You have reached the speed limit set for your MyKey.
Check Speed Drive Safely	You have an active MyKey with a programmed set speed limit.
Buckle Up to Unmute Audio	Belt-Minder turns on with a MyKey in use.
AdvanceTrac On - MyKey Setting	With a MyKey in use, ESC turns on.
Traction Control On - MyKey Setting	With a MyKey in use, traction control turns on.
MyKey Park Aid Cannot be Deactivated	With a MyKey in use, park aid is always on.

Park Brake

Message	Action
Park Brake Engaged	You have set the parking brake and you have driven the vehicle more than 5 km/h. If the warning stays on after you have released the parking brake, contact an authorized dealer.

Park Pilot

Message	Action
Check Rear Park Aid	The system has detected a condition that requires service. Contact an authorized dealer. See **Rear Parking Aid** (page 117).
Rear Park Aid On Off	Displays the park aid status.

Rear Axle

Message	Action
Axle Over Temperature Reduce Speed	This message appears when the oil temperature in the rear differential exceeds a safe limit. Reduce speed to allow the oil temperature to return to normal levels.

Seats

Message	Action
Memory Recall Not Permitted While Driving	A reminder that memory seats are not available while driving.
Memory {0} Saved	Shows where you have saved your memory setting.

Starting System

Message	Action
To START Press Brake	A reminder to apply the brake when starting your vehicle.
To START Press Clutch	A reminder to apply the clutch when starting your vehicle.
Cranking Time Exceeded	The starter has exceeded its cranking time in attempting to start your vehicle.
Engine Start Pending Please Wait	The starter is attempting to start your vehicle.
Pending Start Cancelled	The system has cancelled the pending start.

Steering System

Message	Action
Steering Fault Service Now	The power steering system has detected a condition that requires service. See an authorized dealer.
Steering Loss Stop Safely	The power steering system is not working. Stop your vehicle in a safe place. Contact an authorized dealer.
Steering Assist Fault Service Required	The power steering system has detected a condition within the power steering system or passive entry or passive start system requires service. Contact an authorized dealer.
Steering Lock Malfunction Service Now	The steering lock system has detected a condition that requires service. See an authorized dealer.
Steering Column Lock Remove and re-insert key while turning wheel to unlock	You need to turn your steering wheel while start your vehicle to unlock your steering column.

Tire Pressure Monitoring System

Message	Action
Tire Pressure Low	One or more tires on your vehicle has low tire pressure. See **Tire Pressure Monitoring System** (page 179).
Tire Pressure Monitor Fault	The tire pressure monitoring system is malfunctioning. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, contact an authorized dealer. See **Tire Pressure Monitoring System** (page 179).
Tire Pressure Sensor Fault	A tire pressure sensor is malfunctioning or your spare tire is in use. See **Tire Pressure Monitoring System** (page 179). If the warning stays on or continues to come on, contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.

Mustang (CZG) Australia, Vehicles Built From: 02-05-2016, enAUS, First Printing

Traction Control

Message	Action
Traction control off / Traction control on	The status of the traction control system after you switched it off or on. See **Using Traction Control** (page 113).
Spinout Detected Hazards Activated	A spinout has occurred and the hazards are on.

Transmission

Message	Action
Transmission Malfunction Service Now	See your authorized dealer.
Transmission Overheating Stop Safely	The transmission is overheating and needs to cool. Stop in a safe place as soon as it is possible.
Transmission Over Temperature Stop Safely	The transmission has overheated and needs to cool. Stop in a safe place as soon as it is possible.
Transmission Service Required	See your authorized dealer.
Transmission Too Hot Press Brake	Transmission is getting hot. Stop to let it cool.
Transmission Limited Function See Manual	Displays when the transmission has overheated and has limited functionality. See **Automatic Transmission** (page 105).
Transmission Warming Up Please Wait	Transmission is too cold. Wait for it to warm up before you drive.
Transmission Not in Park	Displays as a reminder to shift into park.
Press Brake Pedal	Displays as a reminder to press the brake pedal in order to select a gear.
Transmission Adjusted	Displays when the transmission has adjusted the shift strategy.

Message	Action
Transmission Adapt-Mode	Displays when the transmission is adjusting the shift strategy.
Transmission Indicat-Mode Lockup On	Displays when the transmission shift lever is locked and unable to select gears.
Transmission Indicat-Mode Lockup Off	Displays when the transmission shift lever is unlocked and free to select gears.

PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

Outside Air

Keep the air intakes in front of the windshield free from obstruction (such as snow or leaves) to allow the climate control system to function effectively.

Recirculated Air

WARNING

Prolonged use of recirculated air may cause the windows to mist up. If the windows mist up, follow the settings for demisting the windshield.

The air currently in the passenger compartment recirculates. Outside air does not enter your vehicle.

Heating

Heating performance depends on the temperature of the engine coolant.

General Information on Controlling the Interior Climate

Fully close all the windows.

Warming the Interior

Direct the air toward your feet. In cold or humid weather conditions, direct some of the air toward the windshield and the door windows.

Cooling the Interior

Direct the air toward your face.

Air Conditioning

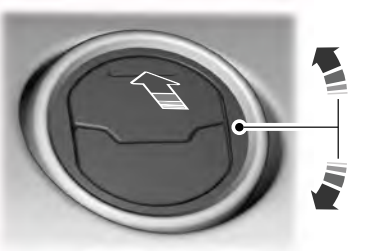
The system directs air through the evaporator for cooling. The evaporator extracts humidity from the air to help keep the windows free of mist. The system directs the resulting condensation to the outside of your vehicle, which may cause a small pool to form under your vehicle. This is normal.

Note: *The air conditioning operates only when the temperature is above 4°C.*

Note: *When you use air conditioning, your vehicle uses more fuel.*

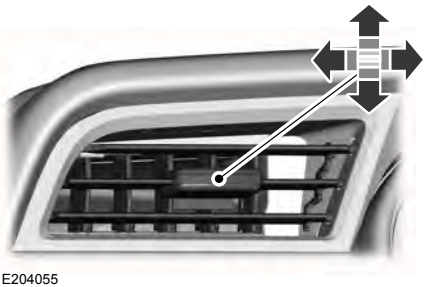
AIR VENTS

Center Air Vents



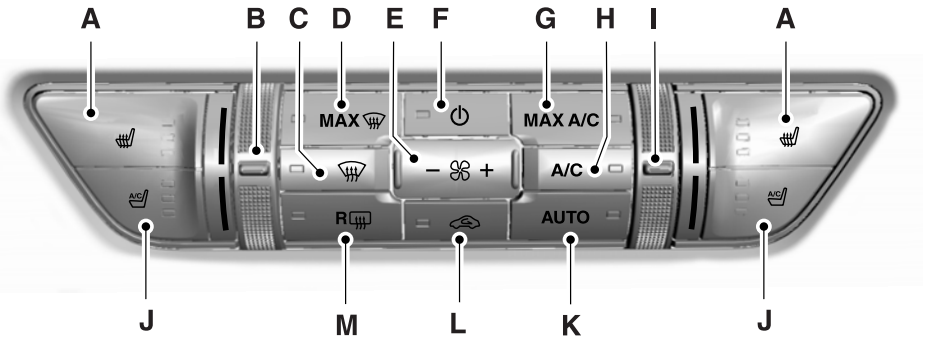
E204054

Side Air Vents



E204055

AUTOMATIC CLIMATE CONTROL



E174096

A **Heated seats:** Press to switch the heated seats on and off. See **Climate Controlled Seats** (page 90).

B **Left-hand temperature control:** Adjust the temperature setting on the left-hand side. This control also adjusts the right-hand side temperature when you switch off dual zone mode.

C **Defrost:** Select to distribute air through the windshield air vents. Air distribution to the instrument panel and footwell vents turns off. You can also use this setting to defrost and clear the windshield of a thin covering of ice.

D **MAX Defrost:** Press to switch on defrost. Outside air flows through the windshield vents, air conditioning automatically turns on, and fan automatically adjusts to the highest speed. You can also use this setting to defrost and clear the windshield of a thin covering of ice. The heated rear window also automatically turns on when you select maximum defrost.

Note: To prevent window fogging, you cannot select recirculated air when maximum defrost is on.

E **Fan speed control:** Adjust the volume of air circulated in the vehicle.

F **Power:** Press to switch the system on and off. When the system is off, it prevents outside air from entering the vehicle.

G **MAX A/C:** Press for maximum cooling. Recirculated air flows through the instrument panel vents, air conditioning automatically turns on, and the fan automatically adjusts to the highest speed.

H **A/C:** Press to switch the air conditioning on or off. Air conditioning cools your vehicle using outside air. To improve the time to reach a comfortable temperature in hot weather, drive with the windows open until you feel cold air through the air vents.

Note: In certain conditions (for example, maximum defrost), the air conditioning may continue to operate even though the air conditioning is switched off.

I **Right-hand temperature control:** Adjust the temperature setting on the right-hand side.

J **Climate controlled seats:** Press to switch the climate controlled seats on and off. See **Climate Controlled Seats** (page 90).

K **AUTO:** Press to switch on automatic operation. Adjust to select the desired temperature. Fan speed, air distribution, air conditioning operation, and outside or recirculated air are automatically adjusted to heat or cool the vehicle to maintain the desired temperature. You can also switch off dual zone mode by pressing and holding for more than two seconds.

L **Recirculated air:** Press to switch between outside air and recirculated air. The air currently in the passenger compartment recirculates. This can reduce the time needed to cool the interior and reduce unwanted odors from entering your vehicle.

Note: Recirculated air may also turn on and off automatically in instrument panel or instrument panel and floor airflow modes during hot weather to improve cooling efficiency.

M **Heated rear window:** Press to switch the heated rear window on and off. See **Heated Windows and Mirrors** (page 85).

HINTS ON CONTROLLING THE INTERIOR CLIMATE

General Hints

WARNING

Prolonged use of recirculated air may cause the windows to fog up. If the windows fog up, follow the settings for demisting the windshield.

Note: *You may feel a small amount of air from the footwell air vents regardless of the air distribution setting.*

Note: *To reduce humidity build-up inside your vehicle, do not drive with the system switched off or with recirculated air always switched on.*

Note: *Do not place objects under the front seats as this may interfere with the airflow to the rear seats.*

Note: *Remove any snow, ice or leaves from the air intake area at the base of the windshield.*

Note: *To improve the time to reach a comfortable temperature in hot weather, drive with the windows open until you feel cold air through the air vents.*

Mustang (CZG) Australia, Vehicles Built From: 02-05-2016, enAUS, First Printing

Manual Climate Control

Note: *To reduce fogging of the windshield during humid weather, adjust the air distribution control to the windshield air vents position.*

Automatic Climate Control

Note: *Adjusting the settings when your vehicle interior is extremely hot or cold is not necessary. The system automatically adjusts to heat or cool the interior to your selected temperature as quickly as possible. For the system to function efficiently, the instrument panel and side air vents should be fully open.*

Note: *If you select **AUTO** during cold outside temperatures, the system directs airflow to the windshield and side window vents. In addition, the fan may run at a slower speed until the engine warms up.*

Note: *If you select **AUTO** during hot outside temperatures, or when the inside of the vehicle is hot, the system automatically uses recirculated air to maximize interior cooling. When the interior reaches the selected temperature, the system automatically switches to using outside air.*

Heating the Interior Quickly

	Vehicle with manual climate control	Vehicle with automatic climate control
1	Adjust the fan speed to a high speed setting.	Press the **AUTO** button.
2	Adjust the temperature control to the full heat setting.	Adjust the temperature control to the desired setting.
3	Select the footwell air vents using the air distribution buttons.	

Recommended Settings for Heating

	Vehicle with manual climate control	Vehicle with automatic climate control
1	Adjust the fan speed to the center setting.	Press the **AUTO** button.
2	Adjust the temperature control to the midway point of the hot settings.	Adjust the temperature control to the desired setting. Use 22°C as a starting point, then adjust the setting as necessary.
3	Select the footwell air vents using the air distribution buttons.	

Cooling the Interior Quickly

	Vehicle with manual climate control	Vehicle with automatic climate control
1	Adjust the temperature control to the **MAX A/C** position.	Press the **MAX A/C** button.
2	Drive with the windows fully open until you feel cold air through the air vents.	

Recommended Settings for Cooling

	Vehicle with manual climate control	Vehicle with automatic climate control
1	Adjust the fan speed to the center setting.	Press the **AUTO** button.
2	Adjust the temperature control to the midway point of the cold settings.	Adjust the temperature control to the desired setting. Use 22°C as a starting point, then adjust the setting as necessary.
3	Select the instrument panel air vents using the air distribution buttons.	

Side Window Defogging in Cold Weather

	Vehicle with manual climate control	Vehicle with automatic climate control
1	Select the windshield air vents using the air distribution buttons.	Press the defrost button.
2	Press the **A/C** button if the indicator is off.	Adjust the temperature control to the desired setting. Use 22°C as a starting point, then adjust the setting as necessary.
3	Adjust the temperature control to the desired setting.	
4	Adjust the fan speed to a high speed setting.	

HEATED WINDOWS AND MIRRORS

Heated Rear Window

Note: *Make sure the engine is running before operating the heated windows.*



Press the button to clear the heated rear window of thin ice and fog. The heated rear window will automatically turn off after a short period of time. Start the engine before you switch the heated rear window on.

Note: *Do not use razor blades or other sharp objects to clean or remove decals from the inside of the heated rear window. The vehicle warranty does not cover damage caused to the heated rear window grid lines.*

Heated Exterior Mirror (If Equipped)

When you switch the heated rear window on, the heated exterior mirrors will automatically turn on.

Note: *Do not remove ice from the mirrors with a scraper or adjust the mirror glass when it is frozen in place.*

Note: *Do not clean the mirror housing or glass with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum-based cleaning products.*

CABIN AIR FILTER

Your vehicle is equipped with a cabin air filter, which gives you and your passengers the following benefits:

- It improves your driving comfort by reducing particle concentration.
- It improves the interior compartment cleanliness.
- It protects the climate control components from particle deposits.

You can locate the cabin air filter behind the glove box.

Note: *Make sure you have a cabin air filter installed at all times. This prevents foreign objects from entering the system. Running the system without a filter in place could result in degradation or damage to the system.*

Replace the filter at regular intervals.

For additional cabin air filter information, or to replace the filter, see an authorized dealer.

SITTING IN THE CORRECT POSITION

WARNINGS

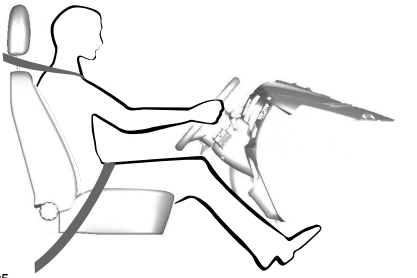
It is extremely dangerous to ride in the cargo area inside or outside the vehicle. In a collision, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed. Do not allow people to ride in any area of the vehicle that is not fitted with seats and seatbelts. Be sure that everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and is using a seatbelt properly.

Ensure that all parts of passengers are inside the vehicle when in motion.

Do not recline the seatback too far as this can cause the occupant to slide under the seatbelt, resulting in serious injury in the event of a collision.

Sitting improperly, out of position or with the seatback reclined too far, can result in serious injury or death in the event of a collision. Always sit upright against your seatback, with your feet on the floor.

Do not place objects higher than the seatback to reduce the risk of serious injury in the event of a collision or during heavy braking.



E68595

When you use them properly, the seat, head restraint, seatbelt and air bags will provide optimum protection in the event of a collision.

We recommend that you follow these guidelines:

- Sit in an upright position with the base of your spine as far back as possible.
- Do not recline the seatback more than 30 degrees.
- Adjust the head restraint so that the top of it is level with the top of your head and as far forward as possible. Make sure that you remain comfortable.
- Keep sufficient distance between yourself and the steering wheel. We recommend a minimum of 25 cm between your breastbone and the air bag cover.
- Hold the steering wheel with your arms slightly bent.
- Bend your legs slightly so that you can press the pedals fully.
- Position the shoulder strap of the seatbelt over the center of your shoulder and position the lap strap tightly across your hips.

Mustang (CZG) Australia, Vehicles Built From: 02-05-2016, enAUS, First Printing

Make sure that your driving position is comfortable and that you can maintain full control of your vehicle.

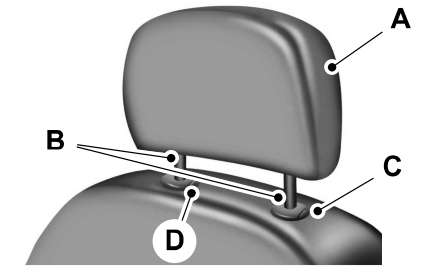
HEAD RESTRAINTS

WARNINGS

Fully adjust the head restraints before you sit in or operate your vehicle. This will help minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash. Do not adjust the head restraint when your vehicle is moving.

When front seats are in use the head restraints must not be removed.

Front seat head restraints



E138642

The head restraints consist of:

A	An energy absorbing head restraint.
B	Two steel stems.
C	Guide sleeve adjust and release button.
D	Guide sleeve unlock and remove button.

Adjusting the Head Restraint

Raising the Head Restraint

Pull the head restraint up.

Lowering the Head Restraint

1. Press and hold button C.
2. Push the head restraint down.

Removing the Head Restraint

1. Pull the head restraint up until it reaches its highest position.
2. Press and hold buttons C and D.
3. Pull the head restraint up.

Installing the Head Restraint

Align the steel stems into the guide sleeves and push the head restraint down until in locks.

Tilting Head Restraints

The front head restraints tilt for extra comfort. To tilt the head restraint, do the following:



E144727

1. Adjust the seatback to an upright driving or riding position.

2. Pivot the head restraint forward toward your head to the desired position.

After the head restraint reaches the forward-most tilt position, pivoting it forward again will then release it to the rearward, untilted position.

MANUAL SEATS (If Equipped)

WARNING

Rock the seat backward and forward after releasing the lever to make sure that it is fully engaged.

The manual front seats may consist of:



E174553

A A bar to move the seat backward and forward.

B A lever to adjust the height of the seat.

C A lever to adjust the angle of the seatback.

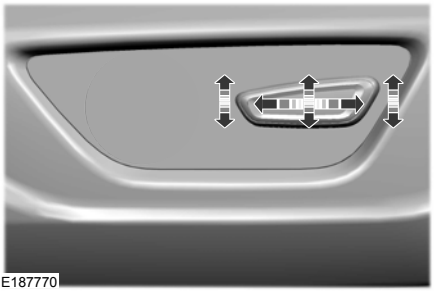
POWER SEATS (If Equipped)

WARNINGS

Do not adjust the driver seat or seatback when your vehicle is moving. Adjusting your seatback while your vehicle is in motion may cause loss of control of your vehicle.

WARNINGS

Reclining the seatback can cause an occupant to slide under the seat's seatbelt, resulting in severe personal injuries in the event of a crash.

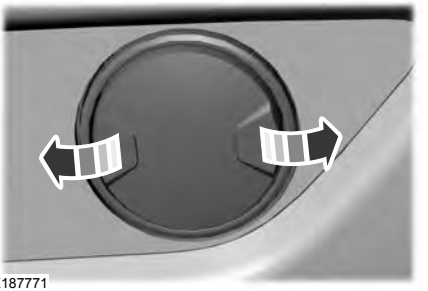


E187770

The power seat control is located on the outboard side of the seat. Move the control in the direction of the arrows to raise or lower the seat cushion or to move the seat forward, backward, up or down.

Power Lumbar (If Equipped)

The power lumbar control is located on the side of the driver seat.



E187771

Press one side of the control to increase lower back firmness. Press the other side of the control to decrease lower back firmness.

REAR SEATS

WARNINGS

When folding the seat backrest down, take care not to get your fingers caught in the mechanism.

Make sure that the seats and the seat backrests are secure and fully locked in their catches.

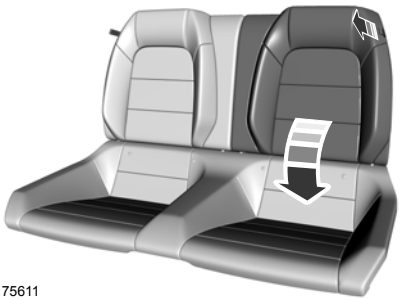
Accessing the Rear Seats



E207088

Use the seatback release to fold the back of the front seat forward for rear seat access. The release handle is on the upper back of the front seat. The seatback has memory and locks automatically in the original position.

Second Row Split-Folding Rear Seat (If Equipped)



E175611

To lower the seatback(s):

1. Pull the strap to release the seatback.
2. Fold the seatback down.

Returning the Seatbacks to the Upright Position

When raising the seatback(s), push the top of the seatback rearward and make sure you hear the seat latch into place. Pull down on the seatback to make sure that it has locked into position.

CLIMATE CONTROLLED SEATS

(If Equipped)

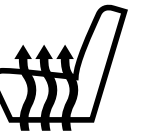
Heated Seats

WARNING

Persons who are unable to feel pain to the skin because of advanced age, chronic illness, diabetes, spinal cord injury, medication, alcohol use, exhaustion, or other physical conditions, must exercise care when using the seat heater. The seat heater may cause burns even at low temperatures, especially if used for long periods of time. Do not place anything on the seat that insulates against heat, such as a blanket or cushion, because this may cause the seat heater to overheat.

Note: *Do not do the following:*

- Place heavy objects on the seat.
- Operate the seat heater if water or any other liquid is spilled on the seat. Allow the seat to dry thoroughly.
- Operate the heated seats unless the engine is running. Doing so can cause the battery to lose charge.



E146322

Touch the heated seat symbol to cycle through the various heat settings and off. Warmer settings are indicated by more indicator lights.

Cooled Seats (If Equipped)

The cooled seats will only function when the engine is running.



E146309

To operate the cooled seats:

Press the cooled seat symbol to cycle through the various cooling settings and off. Cooler settings are indicated by more indicator lights.

If the engine falls below 350 RPM while the cooled seats are on, the feature will turn itself off. You will need to reactivate it.

12 Volt DC Power Point

WARNING

Do not plug optional electrical accessories into the cigar lighter socket (if equipped). Improper use of the lighter can cause damage not covered by your warranty, and can result in fire or serious injury.

Run the vehicle for full capacity use of the power point. To prevent the battery from discharging accidentally:

- Do not use the power point longer than necessary when the vehicle is not running.
- Do not leave devices plugged in overnight or when you park your vehicle for extended periods.

Note: *If used when the vehicle is not running, the battery will discharge. There may be insufficient power to restart your vehicle.*

Note: *Do not insert objects other than an accessory plug into the power point. This will damage the outlet and blow the fuse.*

Note: *Do not hang any type of accessory or accessory bracket from the plug.*

Note: *Do not use the power point over the vehicle capacity of 12 volt DC 180 watts or a fuse may blow.*

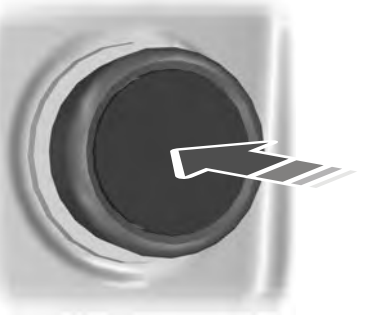
Note: *Always keep the power point caps closed when not in use.*

Locations

Power points may be in the following locations:

- On the instrument panel.
- In the center console storage compartment.

CIGAR LIGHTER



E103382

Press the element in to use the cigar lighter. It will pop out automatically.

Note: *Do not hold the cigar lighter element pressed in.*

Note: *If the power supply does not work after you switch the ignition off, switch the ignition on.*

Note: *If you use the socket when the engine is not running, the battery may lose charge.*

Note: *When you switch the ignition on, you can use the socket to power 12 volt appliances with a maximum current rating of 15 amps.*

CUP HOLDERS

WARNINGS

Do not place hot drinks in the cup holders when your vehicle is moving.

Make sure that cups placed in the holders do not obstruct your vision while driving.

CENTER CONSOLE

Stow items in the cupholder carefully as items may become loose during hard braking, acceleration or collisions, including hot drinks which may spill.

The console includes:

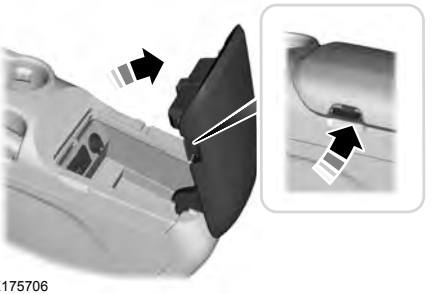
- Cupholder.
- Storage compartment.



E209039

Lift the latch to open the storage compartment and use the following features:

- Auxiliary power point.
- Auxiliary audio input jack.
- USB port.
- Media hub.



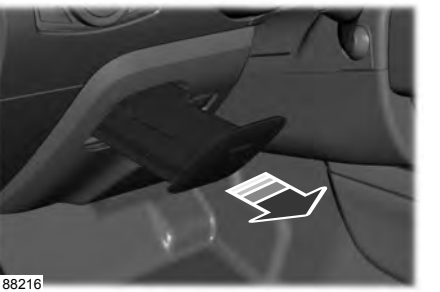
E175706

Locking Storage Bin (If Equipped)

The storage bin locks when the doors are electronically locked. The bin will unlock when the driver door is electronically unlocked with the remote control.

Note: *You cannot lock the storage bin when the vehicle is on.*

GLASSES HOLDER



E188216

Press near the center of the door to open it. Pull out the tray.

GENERAL INFORMATION

WARNINGS

Extended idling at high engine speeds can produce very high temperatures in the engine and exhaust system, creating the risk of fire or other damage.

Do not park, idle or drive your vehicle on dry grass or other dry ground cover. The emission system heats up the engine compartment and exhaust system, creating the risk of fire.

Do not start the engine in a closed garage or in other enclosed areas. Exhaust fumes can be toxic. Always open the garage door before you start the engine.

If you smell exhaust fumes inside your vehicle, have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer immediately. Do not drive your vehicle if you smell exhaust fumes.

If you disconnect the battery, your vehicle may exhibit some unusual driving characteristics for approximately 5 miles (8 kilometers) after you reconnect it. This is because the engine management system must realign itself with the engine. You can disregard any unusual driving characteristics during this period.

The powertrain control system meets all Canadian interference-causing equipment standard requirements regulating the impulse electrical field or radio noise.

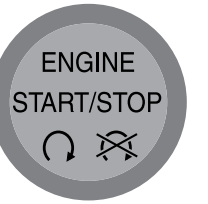
When you start the engine, avoid pressing the accelerator pedal before and during operation. Only use the accelerator pedal when you have difficulty starting the engine.

KEYLESS STARTING

Note: *The keyless starting system may not function if the key is close to metal objects or electronic devices such as cellular phones.*

Note: *A valid key must be located inside your vehicle to switch the ignition on and start the engine.*

Ignition Modes



E146431

The keyless starting system has three modes:

Off: Turns the ignition off.

- Without applying the brake pedal, press and release the button once when the ignition is in the on mode, or when the engine is running but the vehicle is not moving.

On: All electrical circuits are operational and the warning lamps and indicators illuminate.

- Without applying the brake pedal, press and release the button once.

Start: Starts the engine.

- Press the brake pedal (automatic transmission) or clutch pedal (manual transmission), and then press the button for any length of time. An indicator light on the button illuminates when the ignition is on and when the engine starts.

STEERING WHEEL LOCK

Your vehicle has an electronically controlled steering wheel lock that operates automatically.

The system will lock the steering wheel after a short period of time once you have parked your vehicle and the passive key is outside your vehicle, or when you lock your vehicle.

Note: *The system will not lock the steering wheel when the ignition is on or while your vehicle is moving.*

Unlocking the Steering Wheel

Switch the ignition on to unlock the steering wheel.

Note: *You may have to rotate the steering wheel slightly to assist unlocking.*

STARTING A GASOLINE ENGINE

When you start the engine, the idle speed increases, this helps to warm up the engine. If the engine idle speed does not slow down automatically, have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.

Note: *You can crank the engine for a total of 60 seconds (without the engine starting) before the starting system temporarily disables. The 60 seconds does not have to be all at once. For example, if you crank the engine three times for 20 seconds each time, without the engine starting, you reached the 60-second time limit. A message appears in the information display alerting you that you exceeded the cranking time. You cannot attempt to start the engine for at least 15 minutes. After 15 minutes, you are limited to a 15-second engine cranking time. You need to wait 60 minutes before you can crank the engine for 60 seconds again.*

Before starting the engine, check the following:

- Make sure all occupants have fastened their seatbelts.
- Make sure the headlamps and electrical accessories are off.
- Make sure the parking brake is on.
- Move the transmission selector lever to park (P) (automatic transmission) or neutral (manual transmission)

Note: *Do not touch the accelerator pedal.*

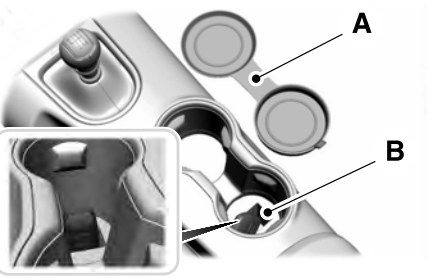
Note: *You must have your intelligent access key in the vehicle in order to shift the transmission out of position **P**.*

1. Fully press the brake pedal.
2. Press the button.

The system does not function if:

- The key frequencies are jammed.
- The key battery has no charge.

If you are unable to start the engine, do the following:



E174956

1. Remove the rubber covering (A) in the cupholder.
2. Place the remote in the backup slot (B) with the buttons facing up and the keyring toward the front of the vehicle.

3. With the key in this position, press the brake pedal (automatic transmission) or clutch pedal (manual transmission), then the START button to switch the ignition on and start your vehicle.

Fast Restart

The fast restart feature allows you to restart the engine within 20 seconds of switching it off, even if a valid key is not present.

Within 20 seconds of switching the engine off, press the brake pedal (automatic transmission) or clutch pedal (manual transmission) and press the button. After 20 seconds have expired, you can no longer restart the engine without the key present inside your vehicle.

Once the engine has started, it remains running until you press the button, even if the system does not detect a valid key. If you open and close a door while the engine is running, the system searches for a valid key. You cannot restart the engine if the system does not detect a valid key within 20 seconds.

Failure to Start

If you cannot start the engine after three attempts, wait 10 seconds and follow this procedure:

1. If your vehicle is equipped with an automatic transmission, fully press the brake pedal. If your vehicle is equipped with a manual transmission, fully press the clutch pedal and apply the handbrake.
2. Move the transmission selector lever to park (P) (automatic transmission) or neutral (manual transmission).
3. Fully press the accelerator pedal and hold it there.
4. Start the engine.

Automatic Engine Shutdown

Your vehicle is equipped with a feature that automatically shuts down the engine if it has been idling for an extended period. The ignition also turns off in order to save battery power. Before the engine shuts down, a message appears in the information display showing a timer counting down from 30 seconds. If you do not intervene within 30 seconds, the engine shuts down. Another message appears in the information display to inform you that the engine has shut down in order to save fuel. Start your vehicle as you normally do.

Automatic Engine Shutdown Override

Note: *You cannot permanently switch off the automatic engine shutdown feature. When you switch it off temporarily, it turns on at the next ignition cycle.*

You can stop the engine shutdown, or reset the timer, at any point before the 30-second countdown has expired by doing any of the following:

- You can reset the timer by interacting with your vehicle (such as pressing the brake pedal or accelerator pedal).
- You can temporarily switch off the shutdown feature any time the ignition is on (for the current ignition cycle only). Use the information display to do so. See **Information Displays** (page 63).
- During the countdown before engine shutdown, you are prompted to press OK or RESET (depending on your type of information display) to temporarily switch the feature off (for the current ignition cycle only).

Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Stationary

1. Move the transmission selector lever to park (P) (automatic transmission) or neutral (manual transmission).

2. Press the button once.
3. Apply the parking brake.

Note: *This switches off the ignition, all electrical circuits, warning lamps and indicators.*

Note: *If the engine is idling for 30 minutes, the ignition and engine automatically shut down.*

Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Moving

WARNING

Switching off the engine when the vehicle is still moving will result in a loss of brake and steering assistance. The steering will not lock, but higher effort will be required. When the ignition is switched off, some electrical circuits, including air bags, warning lamps and indicators may also be off. If the ignition was turned off accidentally, you can shift into neutral (N) and re-start the engine.

1. Move the transmission selector lever to the neutral position and use the brakes to bring your vehicle to a safe stop.
2. When your vehicle has stopped, move the transmission selector lever to park (P) (automatic transmission) or neutral (manual transmission).
3. Press and hold the button for one second, or press it three times within two seconds.
4. Apply the parking brake.

Guarding Against Exhaust Fumes

WARNING

If you smell exhaust fumes inside your vehicle, have your vehicle checked by your authorized dealer immediately. Do not drive your vehicle if you smell exhaust fumes. Carbon monoxide is present in exhaust fumes. Take precautions to avoid its dangerous effects.

Important Ventilating Information

If you stop your vehicle and the leave the engine idling for long periods, we recommend that you do one of the following:

- Open the windows at least 2.5 cm.
- Set your climate control to outside air.

ENGINE BLOCK HEATER (If Equipped)

WARNINGS

Failure to follow engine block heater instructions could result in property damage or serious personal injury.

Do not use your heater with ungrounded electrical systems or two-pronged adapters. There is a risk of electrical shock.

Note: *The heater is most effective when outdoor temperatures are below 0ºF (-18ºC).*

The heater acts as a starting aid by warming the engine coolant. This allows the climate control system to respond quickly. The equipment includes a heater element (installed in the engine block) and a wire harness. You can connect the system to a grounded 220-240 volt AC electrical source.

Mustang (CZG) Australia, Vehicles Built From: 02-05-2016, enAUS, First Printing

We recommend that you do the following for a safe and correct operation:

- Use an extension cord suitable for use outdoors and in cold temperatures. It should be clearly marked that it is suitable for use with outdoor appliances. Do not use an indoor extension cord outdoors. This could result in an electric shock or become a fire hazard.
- Use as short an extension cord as possible.
- Do not use multiple extension cords.
- Make sure that when in operation, the extension cord plug and heater cord plug connections are free and clear of water. This could cause an electric shock or fire.
- Make sure your vehicle is parked in a clean area, clear of combustibles.
- Make sure the heater, heater cord and extension cord are firmly connected.
- Check for heat anywhere in the electrical hookup once the system has been operating for approximately 30 minutes.
- Make sure the system is unplugged and properly stowed before starting and driving your vehicle. Make sure the protective cover seals the prongs of the block heater cord plug when not in use.
- Make sure the heater system is checked for proper operation before winter.

Using the Engine Block Heater

The engine block heater plug may be found in one of the following locations:

- Under the hood.
- In the front fog lamp bezel.
- Front lower grille.

Make sure the receptacle terminals are clean and dry prior to use. Clean them with a dry cloth if necessary.

The heater uses 0.4 to 1.0 kilowatt-hours of energy per hour of use. The system does not have a thermostat. It achieves maximum temperature after approximately three hours of operation. Using the heater longer than three hours does not improve system performance and unnecessarily uses electricity.

SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

WARNINGS

Do not overfill the fuel tank. The pressure in an overfilled tank may cause leakage and lead to fuel spray and fire.

The fuel system may be under pressure. If you hear a hissing sound near the fuel filler inlet, do not refuel until the sound stops. Otherwise, fuel may spray out, which could cause serious personal injury.

Fuels can cause serious injury or death if misused or mishandled.

Flow of fuel through a fuel pump nozzle can produce static electricity. This can cause a fire if you are filling an ungrounded fuel container.

Fuel may contain benzene, which is a cancer-causing agent.

When refueling always shut the engine off and never allow sparks or open flames near the fuel tank filler valve. Never smoke or use a cell phone while refueling. Fuel vapor is extremely hazardous under certain conditions. Avoid inhaling excess fumes.

Observe the following guidelines when handling automotive fuel:

- Extinguish all smoking materials and any open flames before refueling your vehicle.
- Always turn off the vehicle before refueling.
- Automotive fuels can be harmful or fatal if swallowed. Fuel such as gasoline is highly toxic and if swallowed can cause death or permanent injury. If fuel is swallowed, call a physician immediately, even if no symptoms are immediately apparent. The toxic effects of fuel may not be visible for hours.
- Avoid inhaling fuel vapors. Inhaling too much fuel vapor of any kind can lead to eye and respiratory tract irritation. In severe cases, excessive or prolonged breathing of fuel vapor can cause serious illness and permanent injury.
- Avoid getting fuel liquid in your eyes. If fuel is splashed in the eyes, remove contact lenses (if worn), flush with water for 15 minutes and seek medical attention. Failure to seek proper medical attention could lead to permanent injury.
- Fuels can also be harmful if absorbed through the skin. If fuel is splashed on the skin, clothing or both, promptly remove contaminated clothing and wash skin thoroughly with soap and water. Repeated or prolonged skin contact with fuel liquid or vapor causes skin irritation.
- Be particularly careful if you are taking Antabuse or other forms of Disulfiram for the treatment of alcoholism. Breathing gasoline vapors could cause an adverse reaction, serious personal injury or sickness. If fuel is splashed on the skin, wash the affected areas immediately with plenty of soap and water. Consult a physician immediately if you experience any adverse reactions.

Mustang (CZG) Australia, Vehicles Built From: 02-05-2016, enAUS, First Printing

FUEL QUALITY

WARNINGS

Do not mix gasoline with oil, diesel or other liquids. This could cause a chemical reaction.

Do not use leaded gasoline or gasoline with additives containing other metallic compounds (e.g. manganese-based). They could damage the emission system.

Note: *We recommend that you use only high quality fuel.*

Note: *We do not recommend the use of additional additives or other engine treatments for normal vehicle use.*

The engine in your vehicle has been optimized for operation using 95 octane unleaded gasoline that meets the specification defined by EN 228 or the equivalent national specification.

The engine in your vehicle can also operate using 91 octane unleaded gasoline. However if you choose to do so, you may notice some minor loss of performance, economy and increase engine noise.

Your vehicle is suitable for use with ethanol blends up to 10% (E5 and E10).

Note: *Using gasoline containing more than 10% ethanol may damage the engine or emission system and may affect the vehicle Warranty.*

Note: *The use of gasoline containing ethanol may increase the fuel consumption of your vehicle.*

Long-Term Storage

Most gasoline contains ethanol. We recommend that you fill the fuel tank with fuel that does not contain ethanol if you intend to store your vehicle for more than two months. Alternatively, we recommend that you seek advice from an authorized dealer.

FUEL FILLER FUNNEL LOCATION

The fuel filler funnel is located in the spare wheel storage tray.

RUNNING OUT OF FUEL

Running out of fuel can cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

If your vehicle runs out of fuel:

- Add a minimum of 5 L of fuel to restart the engine. If your vehicle is out of fuel and on a steep slope, more fuel may be required.
- You may need to switch the ignition from off to on several times after refueling to allow the fuel system to pump the fuel from the tank to the engine. When restarting, cranking time takes a few seconds longer than normal.

Filling a Portable Fuel Container

Use the following guidelines to avoid electrostatic charge build-up, which can produce a spark, when filling an ungrounded fuel container:

- Only use an approved fuel container to transfer fuel to your vehicle. Place the container on the ground when filling it.
- Do not fill a fuel container when it is inside your vehicle (including the cargo area).

- Keep the fuel pump nozzle in contact with the fuel container when filling it.
- Do not use a device that holds the fuel pump nozzle lever in the fill position.

Adding Fuel From a Portable Fuel Container

WARNINGS

Do not insert the nozzle of a fuel container or an aftermarket funnel into the fuel system filler neck. This may damage the fuel system filler neck or its seal and cause fuel to run onto the ground.

Do not try to pry open or push open the capless fuel system with foreign objects. This could damage the fuel system and its seal and cause injury to you or others.

Do not dispose of fuel in the household refuse or the public sewage system. Use an authorized waste disposal facility.

When refueling the vehicle fuel tank from a fuel container, use the plastic funnel included with your vehicle. See **Fuel Filler Funnel Location** (page 100).

Note: *Do not use aftermarket funnels as they will not work with the capless fuel system and can damage it.*

When refueling the vehicle fuel tank from a fuel container, do the following:

1. Fully open the fuel tank filler door until it engages.
2. Fully insert the plastic funnel into the fuel tank filler pipe opening.


E157452

3. Add fuel to your vehicle from the fuel container.
4. Remove the plastic funnel from the fuel tank filler pipe opening.
5. Fully close the fuel tank filler door.
6. Clean the plastic funnel and place it back in your vehicle or properly dispose of it.

Note: *Extra funnels can be purchased from an authorized dealer if you choose to dispose of the funnel.*

CATALYTIC CONVERTER

WARNING

Do not park or idle your vehicle over dry leaves, dry grass or other combustible materials. The exhaust will radiate a considerable amount of heat during use, and after you have switched the engine off. This is a potential fire hazard.

Driving with a Catalytic Converter

WARNINGS

Avoid running out of fuel.

WARNINGS

Do not crank the engine for long periods.

Do not run the engine when a spark plug lead is disconnected.

Do not push-start or tow-start your vehicle. Use booster cables. See **Jump Starting the Vehicle** (page 136).

Do not switch the ignition off when driving.

REFUELING

WARNINGS

When refueling always shut the engine off and never allow sparks or open flames near the fuel tank filler valve. Never smoke or use a cell phone while refueling. Fuel vapor is extremely hazardous under certain conditions. Avoid inhaling excess fumes.

The fuel system may be under pressure. If you hear a hissing sound near the fuel filler door, do not refuel until the sound stops. Otherwise, fuel may spray out, which could cause serious personal injury.

Do not remove the fuel pump nozzle from its fully inserted position when refueling.

Do not overfill the fuel tank. The pressure in an overfilled tank may cause leakage and lead to fuel spray and fire.

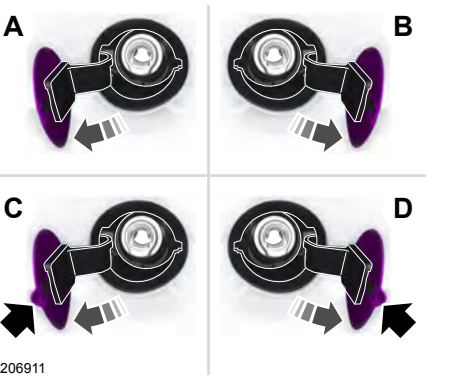
Stop refueling when the fuel pump nozzle automatically shuts off for the first time. Failure to follow this will fill the expansion space in the fuel tank and could lead to fuel overflowing.

WARNINGS

Wait at least 10 seconds before removing the fuel pump nozzle to allow any residual fuel to drain into the fuel tank.

Do not try to pry open or push open the capless fuel system with foreign objects. This could damage the fuel system and its seal and cause injury to you or others.

Note: *Your vehicle does not have a fuel filler cap.*



E206911

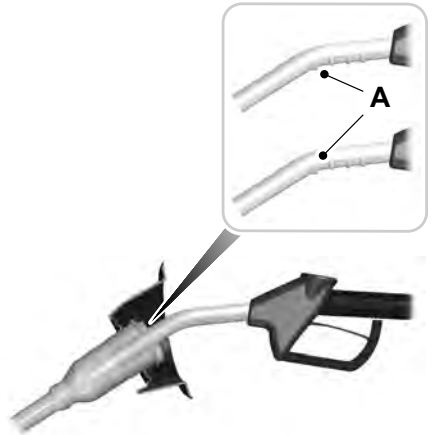
A Left-hand side. To open the fuel filler door, press the center rear edge of the fuel filler door and then release.

B Right-hand side. To open the fuel filler door, press the center rear edge of the fuel filler door and then release.

C Left-hand side. Pull the rear of the fuel tank filler door to open it.

D Right-hand side. Pull the rear of the fuel tank filler door to open it.

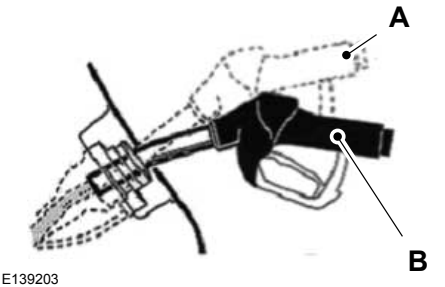
1. Fully open the fuel tank filler door until it engages.



E139202

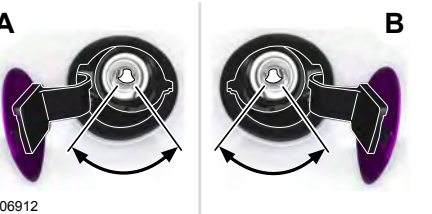
Note: *When you insert the correct size fuel pump nozzle a spring loaded inhibitor will open.*

2. Insert the fuel pump nozzle up to the first notch on the nozzle A. Keep it resting on the cover of the fuel tank filler pipe opening.



E139203

3. Hold the fuel pump nozzle in position B when refueling. Holding the fuel nozzle in position A can affect the flow of fuel and shut off the fuel nozzle before the fuel tank is full.



E206912

4. Operate the fuel pump nozzle within the area shown.


E119081

5. Slightly raise the fuel pump nozzle and then slowly remove it.
6. Fully close the fuel tank filler door.

Note: *Do not attempt to start the engine if you have filled the fuel tank with incorrect fuel. Incorrect fuel use can cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty. Have your vehicle checked immediately.*

System Warnings (If Equipped)

If the fuel filler inlet does not fully close a warning message appears in the information display.

1. Stop your vehicle as soon as safely possible and shift the transmission into park (P) or neutral (N).
2. Apply the parking brake and switch the ignition off.

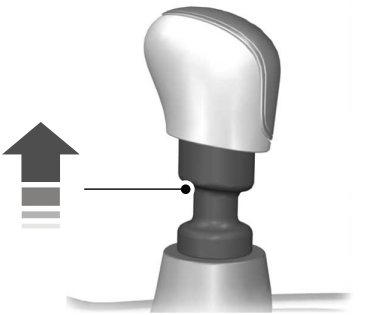
3. Fully open the fuel tank filler door until it engages.
4. Check the fuel filler inlet and the area around it for any items or debris that may be obstructing its movement.
5. Insert a fuel pump nozzle or the fuel filler funnel provided with your vehicle in to the fuel tank filler pipe opening. This action should dislodge any debris that may be preventing the fuel filler inlet from fully closing.

Note: *If this action corrects the problem the message may not reset immediately. If the message remains and the service engine soon warning lamp appears in the information display, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.*

MANUAL TRANSMISSION (If Equipped)

Selecting Reverse Gear

Do not engage reverse gear when your vehicle is moving. This can cause damage to the transmission.



E99067

Raise the collar when you select reverse gear.

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

(If Equipped)

WARNINGS

Always set the parking brake fully and make sure you shift the gearshift lever to park (P). Switch the ignition off and remove the key whenever you leave your vehicle.

Do not apply the brake pedal and accelerator pedal simultaneously. Applying both pedals simultaneously for more than a few seconds will limit engine rpm, which may result in difficulty maintaining speed in traffic and could lead to serious injury.

Understanding the Positions of Your Automatic Transmission

Putting your vehicle in gear:

1. Fully press down the brake pedal.
2. Press and hold the button on the top of the gearshift lever.
3. Move the gearshift lever into the desired gear.
4. Release the button and your transmission remains in the selected gear.



E174572

Park (P)

This position locks the transmission and prevents the rear wheels from turning. Come to a complete stop before putting your vehicle into and out of park (P).

Reverse (R)

With the selector in reverse (R), your vehicle moves backward. Always come to a complete stop before shifting into and out of reverse (R).

Neutral (N)

With the selector in neutral (N), you can start your vehicle and it is free to roll. Hold the brake pedal down while in this position.

Drive (D)

Drive (D) is the normal driving position for the best fuel economy. The overdrive function allows automatic upshifts and downshifts through all gears.

Sport (S)

Putting your vehicle in sport (S):

- Provides additional engine braking and extends lower gear operation to enhance performance for uphill climbs, hilly terrain or mountainous areas. This will increase engine RPM during engine braking.
- Provides additional lower gear operation through the automatic transmission shift strategy.
- Provides gear selection more quickly and at higher engine speeds.

SelectShift Automatic™ Transmission

This feature gives you the ability to change gears up or down as desired.

As long as the engine speed does not exceed the maximum allowable limit, downshifts are allowed. SelectShift automatically downshifts at low engine speeds in order to prevent engine stalls.

Note: *Engine damage may occur if you maintain excessive engine revving without shifting.*

SelectShift does not automatically upshift, even if the engine is approaching the RPM limit, unless the accelerator pedal is at full travel. Take notice of the shift indicator lamp, which alerts you when to shift to make sure you achieve the highest level of efficiency and fuel economy.

Pull the + paddle on the steering wheel to activate SelectShift.

- Pull the right paddle (+) to upshift.
- Pull the left paddle (–) to downshift.



E144821

SelectShift in drive (D):

- Provides a temporary manual mode for performing more demanding maneuvers where extra control of gear selection is required (for example, when towing or overtaking). This mode will hold a selected gear for a temporary period of time dependent on driver inputs (for example, steering or accelerator pedal input).

SelectShift in sport (S):

- Provides a permanent manual gear selection where full control of gear selection is required.

To exit SelectShift mode shift the transmission into another gear (for example, drive [D]).

The instrument cluster displays your currently selected gear. If a gear is requested but not available due to vehicle conditions (low speed, too high engine speed for requested gear selection), the current gear flashes three times.

Note: *At full accelerator pedal travel, the transmission automatically downshifts for maximum performance.*

Brake-Shift Interlock

WARNINGS

Do not drive your vehicle until you verify that the brake lamps are working.

WARNINGS

When doing this procedure, you need to take the transmission out of park (P) which means your vehicle can roll freely. To avoid unwanted vehicle movement, always fully set the parking brake prior to doing this procedure. Use wheels chocks if appropriate.

If the parking brake is fully released, but the brake warning lamp remains illuminated, the brakes may not be working properly. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Note: *Contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible if this procedure is used.*

Note: *For some markets, this feature will be disabled.*

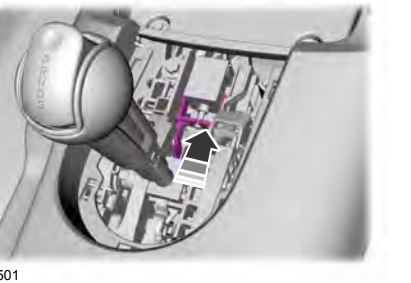
Use the brake shift interlock lever to move the gearshift lever from the park position in the event of an electrical malfunction or if your vehicle has a dead battery.

Apply the parking brake and switch the ignition off before performing this procedure.



E184747

1. Using a flat head screwdriver or similar tool, remove the chrome bezel and gearshift bracket at the base of the gearshift lever.



E174501

2. Locate the white release lever and slide the lever forward while pulling the gearshift lever out of the park (P) position and into the neutral (N) position.
3. Reinstall the console.
4. Start your vehicle and release the parking brake.

Automatic Transmission Adaptive Learning

This feature is designed to increase durability and provide consistent shift feel over the life of your vehicle. A new vehicle or transmission may have firm or soft shifts. This operation is normal and does not affect function or durability of the transmission. Over time, the adaptive learning process will fully update transmission operation. Additionally, whenever you disconnect the battery is or install a new battery, the system must relearn the strategy.

If Your Vehicle Gets Stuck In Mud or Snow

Note: *Do not rock your vehicle if the engine is not at normal operating temperature or damage to the transmission may occur.*

Note: *Do not rock your vehicle for more than a minute or damage to the transmission and tires may occur, or the engine may overheat.*

If your vehicle gets stuck in mud or snow, you may rock it out by shifting between forward and reverse gears, stopping between shifts in a steady pattern. Press lightly on the accelerator in each gear.

LIMITED SLIP DIFFERENTIAL

This axle provides added traction on slippery surfaces, particularly when one wheel is on a poor traction surface. Under normal conditions, the limited-slip axle functions like a standard rear axle. The axle may exhibit a slight noise or vibration during tight turns with low vehicle speed. This is normal behavior and indicates the axle is working.

GENERAL INFORMATION

Note: *Occasional brake noise is normal. If a metal-to-metal, continuous grinding or continuous squeal sound is present, the brake linings may be worn-out. Have the system checked by an authorized dealer. If your vehicle has continuous vibration or shudder in the steering wheel while braking, have it checked by an authorized dealer.*

Note: *Brake dust may accumulate on the wheels, even under normal driving conditions. Some dust is inevitable as the brakes wear and does not contribute to brake noise. See* ***Cleaning the Alloy Wheels*** *(page 170).*



See **Warning Lamps and Indicators** (page 59).

Wet brakes result in reduced braking efficiency. Gently press the brake pedal a few times when driving from a car wash or standing water to dry the brakes.

Brake Over Accelerator

In the event the accelerator pedal becomes stuck or entrapped, apply steady and firm pressure to the brake pedal to slow the vehicle and reduce engine power. If you experience this condition, apply the brakes and bring your vehicle to a safe stop. Move the transmission to park (P), switch the engine off and apply the parking brake. Inspect the accelerator pedal for any interference. If none are found and the condition persists, have your vehicle towed to the nearest authorized dealer.

Brake Assist

Brake assist detects when you brake rapidly by measuring the rate at which you press the brake pedal. It provides maximum braking efficiency as long as you press the pedal, and can reduce stopping distances in critical situations.

Anti-lock Brake System

This system helps you maintain steering control during emergency stops by keeping the brakes from locking.



This lamp momentarily illuminates when you turn the ignition on. If the light does not illuminate during start up, remains on or flashes, the system may be disabled. Have the system checked by an authorized dealer. If the anti-lock brake system is disabled, normal braking is still effective.



If the brake warning lamp remains illuminated after you release the parking brake, have the system checked by an authorized dealer.

HINTS ON DRIVING WITH ANTI-LOCK BRAKES

Note: *When the system is operating, the brake pedal may pulse and may travel further. Maintain pressure on the brake pedal. You may also hear a noise from the system. This is normal.*

The anti-lock braking system will not eliminate the risks when:

- You drive too closely to the vehicle in front of you.
- Your vehicle is hydroplaning.
- You take corners too fast.
- The road surface is poor.

PARKING BRAKE

WARNINGS



If the parking brake is fully released, but the brake warning lamp remains illuminated, the brakes may not be working properly. See your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

WARNINGS

Always set the parking brake fully and make sure that the transmission is securely latched in park (P) (automatic transmission) or first gear (1) (manual transmission).


E223664

To set the parking brake, pull the parking brake handle up as far as possible.

To release the parking brake:

1. Press and hold the button located at the end of the parking brake handle.
2. Pull the handle up slightly, then push the handle down.

HILL START ASSIST

WARNINGS

The system does not replace the parking brake. When you leave your vehicle, always apply the parking brake and shift the transmission into park (P) for automatic transmission or first gear for manual transmission.

You must remain in your vehicle once you have activated the system.

During all times, you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system and intervening, if required.

WARNINGS

If the engine is revved excessively, or if a malfunction is detected, the system will be deactivated.

The system makes it easier to pull away when your vehicle is on a slope without the need to use the parking brake.

When the system is active, your vehicle will remain stationary on the slope for two to three seconds after you release the brake pedal. This allows you time to move your foot from the brake to the accelerator pedal. The brakes are released automatically once the engine has developed sufficient torque to prevent your vehicle from rolling down the slope. This is an advantage when pulling away on a slope, for example from a car park ramp, traffic lights or when reversing uphill into a parking space.

The system will activate automatically on any slope that will cause significant vehicle rollback. For vehicles with a manual transmission, you can switch this feature off using the information display. See **Information Displays** (page 63). The system will remain on or off depending on how it was last set.

Note: *There is no warning lamp to indicate the system is either on or off.*

Using Hill Start Assist

1. Press the brake pedal to bring your vehicle to a complete standstill. Keep the brake pedal pressed and select an uphill gear (for example, first (1) when facing uphill or reverse (R) when facing downhill).
2. If the sensors detect that your vehicle is on a slope, the system will activate automatically.

3. When you remove your foot from the brake pedal, your vehicle will remain on the slope without rolling away for about two or three seconds. This hold time will automatically be extended if you are in the process of driving off.
4. Drive off in the normal manner. The brakes will release automatically.

Switching the System On and Off

Vehicles with Manual Transmission

You can switch this feature on or off in the information display. The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.

Vehicles with Automatic Transmission

You cannot turn the system on or off. When you switch the ignition on, the system automatically turns on.

PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

The traction control system helps avoid drive wheel spin and loss of traction.

If your vehicle begins to slide, the system applies the brakes to individual wheels and, when needed, reduces engine power at the same time. If the wheels spin when accelerating on slippery or loose surfaces, the system reduces engine power in order to increase traction.

USING TRACTION CONTROL

WARNING

The stability and traction control light illuminates steadily if the system detects a failure. Make sure you did not manually disable the traction control system using the switch. If the stability control and traction control light is still illuminating steadily, have the system serviced by an authorized dealer immediately. Operating your vehicle with traction control disabled could lead to an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.

The system automatically turns on each time you switch the ignition on.

If your vehicle is stuck in mud or snow, switching traction control off may be beneficial as this allows the wheels to spin.

Note: *When you switch traction control off, stability control remains fully active.*

Switching the System Off



E166706

The switch for the stability and traction control system is on the instrument panel.

When you switch the system off, a message and an illuminated icon appear on the instrument cluster.

Use the switch again to return the traction control system to normal operation.

Your vehicle may have MyKey restrictions regarding this feature. See **Principle of Operation** (page 31).

System Indicator Lights and Messages



The stability and traction control light temporarily illuminates on engine start-up and flashes:

- When a driving condition activates either of the systems.
- If a problem occurs in either of the systems.



The stability and traction control off light temporarily illuminates on engine start-up and stays on:

- When you switch the traction control system off.
- When you select an alternative stability control mode.

PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

WARNINGS

Vehicle modifications involving braking system, aftermarket roof racks, suspension, steering system, tire construction and wheel and tire size may change the handling characteristics of your vehicle and may adversely affect the performance of the electronic stability control system. In addition, installing any stereo loudspeakers may interfere with and adversely affect the electronic stability control system. Install any aftermarket stereo loudspeaker as far as possible from the front center console, the tunnel, and the front seats in order to minimize the risk of interfering with the electronic stability control sensors. Reducing the effectiveness of the electronic stability control system could lead to an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.

Remember that even advanced technology cannot defy the laws of physics. It's always possible to lose control of a vehicle due to inappropriate driver input for the conditions. Aggressive driving on any road condition can cause you to lose control of your vehicle increasing the risk of personal injury or property damage. Activation of the electronic stability control system is an indication that at least some of the tires have exceeded their ability to grip the road; this could reduce the operator's ability to control the vehicle potentially resulting in a loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death. If your electronic stability control system activates, SLOW DOWN.

The system automatically turns on each time you switch the ignition on.

If a fault occurs in either the stability control or the traction control system, you may experience the following conditions:

- The stability and traction control light illuminates steadily.
- The stability control and traction control systems do not enhance your vehicle's ability to maintain traction of the wheels.

If a driving condition activates either the stability control or the traction control system you may experience the following conditions:

- The stability and traction control light flashes.
- Your vehicle slows down.
- Reduced engine power.
- A vibration in the brake pedal.
- The brake pedal is stiffer than usual.
- If the driving condition is severe and your foot is not on the brake, the brake pedal may move as the system applies higher brake force.

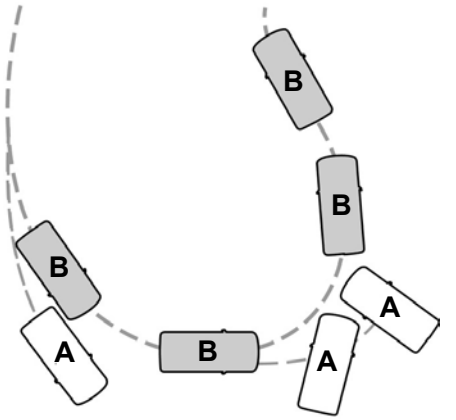
The stability control system has several features built into it to help you maintain control of your vehicle:

Electronic Stability Control

The system enhances your vehicle's ability to prevent skids or lateral slides by applying brakes to one or more of the wheels individually and, if necessary, reducing engine power.

Traction Control

The system enhances your vehicle's ability to maintain traction of the wheels by detecting and controlling wheel spin. See **Using Traction Control** (page 113).



E72903

A Vehicle without stability control skidding off its intended route.

B Vehicle with stability control maintaining control on a slippery surface.

USING STABILITY CONTROL

Electronic Stability Control

The system automatically turns on each time you switch the ignition on. The electronic stability control portion of the system is disabled when the transmission is in reverse (R) or, on some models, if you press and hold the electronic stability control button for more than five seconds when you apply the brakes and the vehicle is at a stop. You can switch off the traction control portion of the system independently. See **Using Traction Control** (page 113).

ESC features				
Button functions	**Mode**	**Stability control off light**	**Electronic stability control**	**Traction control system**
Default at start-up	-	On during bulb check	Enabled	Enabled
Button pressed momentarily	Traction control off	On	Enabled	Disabled
Button pressed twice rapidly	Sport mode (if equipped)	On	Enabled	Enabled
Button pressed and held more than five seconds	ESC disabled	On	Disabled	Disabled
Button pressed again after deactivation	ESC fully enabled	Off	Enabled	Enabled

Note: *Do not use Sport mode on public roadways.*

Some models may also come equipped with a sport mode which allows the driver to reduce normal electronic stability control system intervention and provide a more spirited driving experience. To enter sport mode, toggle the stability control button twice rapidly. The message appears in the information display that the system is now in sport mode.

For vehicles equipped with the selectable drive mode feature, electronic stability control sport mode is not available. You can utilize the performance oriented electronic stability control mode by selecting track drive mode. In this mode, electronic stability control intervention is reduced and tuned specifically for track use only and is not for use on public roads. In all of the selectable drive modes, you can disable traction control and electronic stability control with the electronic stability control switch.

PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

WARNINGS

To help avoid personal injury, please read and understand the limitations of the system as contained in this section. Sensing is only an aid for some (generally large and fixed) objects when moving on a flat surface at parking speeds. Certain objects with surfaces that absorb ultrasonic waves, surrounding vehicle's parking aid systems, traffic control systems, fluorescent lamps, inclement weather, air brakes, and external motors and fans may also affect the function of the sensing system; this may include reduced performance or a false activation.

To help avoid personal injury, always use caution when in reverse (R) and when using the sensing system.

This system is not designed to prevent contact with small or moving objects. The system is designed to provide a warning to assist the driver in detecting large stationary objects to avoid damaging your vehicle. The system may not detect smaller objects, particularly those close to the ground.

Certain add-on devices such as large trailer hitches, bike or surfboard racks and any device that may block the normal detection zone of the system, may create false beeps.

Note: *Keep the sensors, located on the bumper or fascia, free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt. If the sensors are covered, the system's accuracy can be affected. Do not clean the sensors with sharp objects.*

Note: *If your vehicle sustains damage to the bumper or fascia, leaving it misaligned or bent, the sensing zone may be altered causing inaccurate measurement of obstacles or false alarms.*

Note: *The sensing system cannot be turned off when a MyKey is present. See* ***Principle of Operation*** *(page 31).*

Note: *If you attach certain add-on devices such as a trailer or bike rack, the rear sensing system may detect that add-on device and therefore provide warnings. It is suggested that you disable the rear sensing system when you attach an add-on device to your vehicle to prevent these warnings.*

The sensing system warns the driver of obstacles within a certain range of your vehicle. The system turns on automatically whenever you switch the ignition on.



You can turn the system on or off by pressing the parking aid button. If your vehicle does not have a parking aid button, the system can be switched off through the information display menu or from the pop-up message that appears once you shift the transmission into reverse (R). See **General Information** (page 63).

If a fault is present in the system, a warning message appears in the information display. See **Information Messages** (page 70).

REAR PARKING AID (If Equipped)

The rear sensors are only active when the transmission is in reverse (R). As your vehicle moves closer to the obstacle, the rate of the audible warning increases. When the obstacle is less than 30 cm away, the warning sounds continuously. If the system detects a stationary or receding object farther than 30 cm from the corners of the bumper, the tone sounds for only three seconds. Once the system detects an object approaching, the warning sounds again.

Mustang (CZG) Australia, Vehicles Built From: 02-05-2016, enAUS, First Printing



E130178

Coverage area of up to 1.8 m from the rear bumper. There may be decreased coverage area at the outer corners of the bumper.

The system detects certain objects while the transmission is in reverse (R) :

- Your vehicle is moving toward a stationary object at a speed of 5 km/h or less.
- Your vehicle is not moving, but a moving object is approaching the rear of your vehicle at a speed of 5 km/h or less.
- Your vehicle is moving at a speed of less than 5 km/h and a moving object is approaching the rear of your vehicle at a speed of less than 5 km/h.

The system provides audio warnings only when your vehicle is moving or when your vehicle is stationary and the detected obstacle is less than 30 cm away from the bumper.

Obstacle Distance Indicator (If Equipped)

The system provides obstacle distance indication through the information display. The distance indicator displays when the transmission is in reverse (R).

The indicator displays:

- As the distance to the obstacle decreases the indicator blocks illuminate and move towards the vehicle icon.
- If there is no obstacle detected, the distance indicator blocks are grayed out.

REAR VIEW CAMERA

WARNINGS

The rear view camera system is a reverse aid supplement device that still requires the driver to use it in conjunction with the interior and exterior mirrors for maximum coverage.

Objects that are close to either corner of the bumper or under the bumper, might not be seen on the screen due to the limited coverage of the camera system.

Reverse your vehicle as slow as possible, higher speeds may limit your reaction time to stop your vehicle.

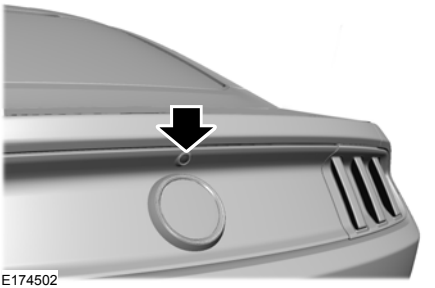
Use caution when the rear cargo door is ajar. If the rear cargo door is ajar, the camera will be out of position and the video image may be incorrect. All guidelines disappear when the rear cargo door is ajar. Some vehicles may not come equipped with guidelines.

Do not switch the camera features on or off when your vehicle is moving.

The rear view camera system provides a video image of the area behind your vehicle.

During operation, lines appear in the display which represent your vehicle's path and proximity to objects behind your vehicle.

Mustang (CZG) Australia, Vehicles Built From: 02-05-2016, enAUS, First Printing


E174502

The camera is located on the rear cargo door.

Using the Rear View Camera System

The rear view camera system displays what is behind your vehicle when you place the transmission in reverse (R).

Note: *The reverse sensing system is not effective at speeds above 5 km/h and may not detect certain angular or moving objects.*

The system uses two types of guides to help you see what is behind your vehicle:

- Fixed guidelines: Show the actual path your vehicle is moving in while reversing in a straight line. This can be helpful when backing into a parking space or aligning your vehicle with another object behind you.
- Centerline: Helps align the center of your vehicle with an object.

Note: *If the transmission is in reverse (R) and the luggage compartment is open, no camera features will display.*

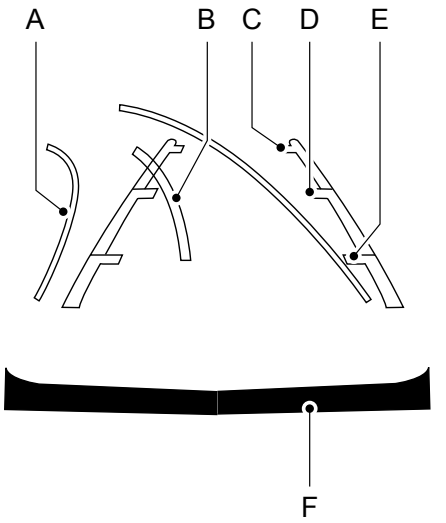
The camera may not operate correctly under the following conditions:

- Nighttime or dark areas if the reverse lamps are not operating.
- Mud, water or debris obstructs the camera's view. Clean the lens with a soft, lint-free cloth and non-abrasive cleaner.
- The camera is misaligned due to damage to the rear of your vehicle.

Camera Guidelines

Note: *Active guidelines are only available when the transmission is in reverse (R).*

Note: *Upon a battery disconnect, the active guidelines may not be functional until your vehicle has been driven a short distance and exceeds a speed of 20 km/h.*



E142436

A	Active guidelines
B	Centerline
C	Fixed guideline: Green zone
D	Fixed guideline: Yellow zone
E	Fixed guideline: Red zone
F	Rear bumper

Active guidelines only show with fixed guidelines. To use active guidelines, turn the steering wheel to point the guidelines toward an intended path. If the steering wheel position changes while reversing, your vehicle might deviate from the original intended path.

The fixed and active guidelines fade in and out depending on the steering wheel position. The active guidelines do not show when the steering wheel position is straight.

Always use caution while reversing. Objects in the red zone are closest to your vehicle and objects in the green zone are farther away. Objects are getting closer to your vehicle as they move from the green zone to the yellow or red zones. Use the side view mirrors and rear view mirror to get better coverage on both sides and rear of your vehicle.

Manual Zoom

WARNING

When manual zoom is on, the full area behind your vehicle may not show. Be aware of your surroundings when using the manual zoom feature.

Note: *Manual zoom is only available when the transmission is in reverse (R). When manual zoom is enabled, only the centerline is shown.*

Selectable settings for this feature are Zoom in (+) and Zoom out (-). Press the symbol in the camera screen to change the view. The default setting is Zoom OFF.

This feature allows you to get a closer view of an object behind your vehicle. The zoomed image keeps the bumper in the image to provide a reference. The zoom is only active while the transmission is in reverse (R). When the transmission shifts out of reverse (R), the feature automatically turns off and must be reset when it is used again.

Camera System Settings

The rear view camera system settings can be accessed through the display screen. See **General Information** (page 63).

Enhanced Park Aids or Park Pilot

Selectable settings for this feature are ON and OFF.

The system uses red, yellow and green highlights that appear on top of the video image when any of the sensing systems detect an object.

Vehicles equipped with touchscreen

The system will provide an image of your vehicle and the sensor zones. The zones will highlight green, yellow and red when the parking aid sensors detect an object in the coverage area.

The coverage area is up to 1.8 m from the rear bumper. There is decreased coverage area at the outer corners of the bumper.



E130178

For additional information of the zone coverage and the rear sensing system. See **Rear Parking Aid** (page 117).

Rear Camera Delay

Selectable settings for this feature are ON and OFF.

The default setting for the rear camera delay is OFF.

When shifting the transmission out of reverse (R) and into any gear other than park (P), the camera image remains in the display until:

- Your vehicle speed sufficiently increases.
- You shift your vehicle into park (P).
- You pull the hand brake on vehicles with a manual transmission.

PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

Cruise control lets you maintain a set speed without keeping your foot on the accelerator pedal. You can use cruise control when your vehicle speed is greater than 30 km/h.

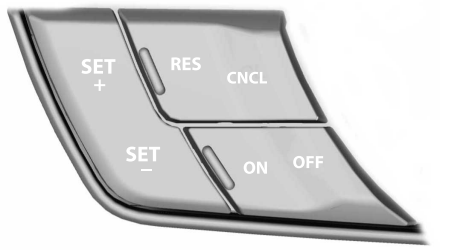
USING CRUISE CONTROL

WARNINGS

Do not use cruise control on winding roads, in heavy traffic or when the road surface is slippery. This could result in loss of vehicle control, serious injury or death.

When you are going downhill, your vehicle speed may increase above the set speed. The system will not apply the brakes but a warning displays.

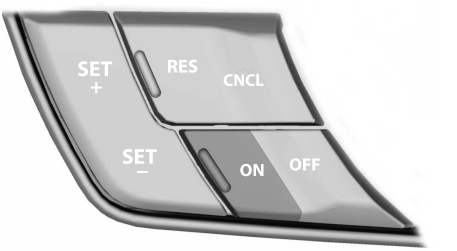
Note: *Cruise control will disengage if the vehicle speed decreases more than 16 km/h below the set speed while driving uphill.*



E176993

The cruise controls are on the steering wheel.

Switching Cruise Control On



E176994

Press and release **ON**.

The indicator appears in the instrument cluster.

Setting the Cruise Speed

1. Drive to desired speed.
2. Press and release **SET+**.
3. Take your foot off the accelerator pedal.

Changing the Set Speed

- Press and release **SET+** or **SET-**. When you select km/h as the display measurement in the information display the set speed changes in approximately 2 km/h increments. When you select mph as the display measurement in the information display the set speed changes in approximately 1 mph increments.
- Press the accelerator or brake pedal until you reach the desired speed. Press and release **SET+**.
- Press and hold **SET+** or **SET-**. Release the control when you reach the desired speed.

Canceling the Set Speed

Press and release **CNCL** or tap the brake pedal. The set speed does not erase.

Resuming the Set Speed

Press and release **RES**.

Switching Cruise Control Off

Press and release **OFF** when the system is in stand by mode or switch the ignition off.

Note: *You erase the set speed when you switch the system off.*

STEERING

Electric Power Steering

WARNINGS

The electric power steering system has diagnostic checks that continuously monitor the system. If a fault is detected, a message displays in the information display. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Switch the ignition off. After at least 10 seconds, switch the ignition on and watch the information display for a steering system warning message. If a steering system warning message returns, have the system checked by an authorized dealer.

If the system detects an error, you may not feel a difference in the steering, however a serious condition may exist. Obtain immediate service from an authorized dealer, failure to do so may result in loss of steering control.

Your vehicle has an electric power steering system. There is no fluid reservoir. No maintenance is required.

If your vehicle loses electrical power while you are driving, electric power steering assistance is lost. The steering system still operates and you can steer your vehicle manually. Manually steering your vehicle requires more effort.

Extreme continuous steering may increase the effort required for you to steer your vehicle. This increased effort prevents overheating and permanent damage to the steering system. You do not lose the ability to steer your vehicle manually. Typical steering and driving maneuvers allow the system to cool and return to normal operation.

Steering Tips

If the steering wanders or pulls, check for:

- Correct tire pressures.
- Uneven tire wear.
- Loose or worn suspension components.
- Loose or worn steering components.
- Improper vehicle alignment.

Note: *A high crown in the road or high crosswinds may also make the steering seem to wander or pull.*

Adaptive Learning

The electronic power steering system adaptive learning helps correct road irregularities and improves overall handling and steering feel. It communicates with the brake system to help operate advanced stability control and accident avoidance systems. Additionally, whenever the battery is disconnected or a new battery installed, you must drive your vehicle a short distance before the system relearns the strategy and reactivates all systems.

DRIVE CONTROL

Selectable Drive Modes

Selectable drive modes delivers a driving experience through a suite of sophisticated electronic vehicle systems. These systems optimize steering, handling and powertrain response. This provides a single location to control multiple systems performance settings.

Selectable drive modes consists of the following systems:

Mustang (CZG) Australia, Vehicles Built From: 02-05-2016, enAUS, First Printing

- Electronically power-assisted steering adjusts steering effort and feel based on your selected mode.
- Electronic stability control and traction control maintain your vehicle control in adverse conditions or high performance driving. See **Stability Control** (page 114).
- Electronic throttle control enhances the powertrain response to your inputs.

Using Selectable Drive Modes

Selectable drive modes automatically tailors your vehicle configuration for each mode selected.



To change the drive mode setting, toggle the mode button or switch on the instrument panel under the display. The first press of the mode button or switch illuminates the selected mode, subsequent presses will change the selected mode.

Note: *Mode changes are not available when the vehicle ignition is off or reverse (R) gear is selected. In gear position drive (D), the available modes are Normal, Sport+, Track and Snow/Wet. In gear position sport (S) Snow/Wet and Normal mode are unavailable.*

Modes:

- Normal – Delivers a balanced combination of comfort and handling. This mode provides an engaging drive experience and a direct connection to the road without sacrificing any of the composure demanded from your vehicle.
- Sport – Engages when you shift your automatic transmission into sport (S). Sport mode increases throttle response and helps your vehicle accelerate faster, but does not change the feel of the steering or stability system.
- Sport+ – Provides a sportier steering feel and throttle response. Sport+ mode is ideal for use during more spirited driving.
- Track – Provides a performance driving experience. The engine responds directly to your inputs and takes on a more powerful tone. Track mode is for use when pure performance is desired. A performance oriented traction control mode is automatically utilized when Track drive mode is selected. In this mode, traction control intervention is reduced and tuned specifically for track usage only and is not intended for public roads. See **Using Stability Control** (page 115).
- Snow/Wet - Provides a confident handling driving experience during poor weather. This mode provides a confident drive experience and a direct connection to the road without sacrificing any of the composure demanded from your vehicle.

Note: *Selectable driving modes has diagnostic checks that continuously monitor the system to ensure proper operation. Certain selectable drive modes will not be available based on gear shifter position (for example, Snow/Wet is not available while in sport (S) position). If a selected mode is unavailable due to a system fault or change in gear shifter position, the selected mode will default to Normal.*

Note: *Collision warning with brake support is automatically disabled when Track mode is selected.*

Selectable Steering

Note: *The steering setting defaults to Normal if the battery is disconnected or removed.*



To change the steering feel, toggle the switch on the instrument panel. The first press illuminates the selected mode, subsequent presses will change the selected mode.

Modes:

- Normal - Default factory setting.
- Sport - Slightly higher effort required for steering with more road force felt through the steering wheel.
- Comfort - Slightly less effort required for steering with less road force felt through the steering wheel.

After selecting the desired setting, you may feel a soft feedback bump in the steering wheel when the changeover occurs.

Note: *If your vehicle is equipped with the selectable drive modes feature, the steering feel will change when you select a new drive mode. You can override this automatic selection by pressing the steering button or switch.*

GENERAL INFORMATION

WARNINGS


Use load securing straps to an approved standard, e.g. DIN.


Make sure that you secure all loose items properly.


Place luggage and other loads as low and as far forward as possible within the luggage or loadspace.


Do not drive with the luggage compartment or rear door open. Exhaust fumes may enter your vehicle.


Do not exceed the maximum front and rear axle loads for your vehicle. See **Vehicle Identification Plate** (page 192).


Do not allow items to contact the rear windows.

Note: *When loading long objects in to your vehicle, for example pipes, timber or furniture be careful not to damage the interior trim.*

TOWING A TRAILER

WARNING

Your vehicle is not approved for trailer towing. Never tow a trailer with your vehicle.

TOWING THE VEHICLE ON FOUR WHEELS

Emergency Towing

WARNING

If your vehicle has a steering wheel lock make sure the ignition is in the accessory or on position when being towed.

You can flat-tow (all wheels on the ground, regardless of the powertrain or transmission configuration) your disabled vehicle (without access to wheel dollies or vehicle transport trailer) under the following conditions:

- Your vehicle is facing forward so you tow it in a forward direction.
- You shift into Neutral (N). If you cannot shift into Neutral (N), you may need to override the transmission. See **Transmission** (page 105).
- Maximum speed is 56 km/h.
- Maximum distance is 80 km.

Recreational Towing

Note: *Put your climate control system in recirculated air mode to prevent exhaust fumes from entering the vehicle. See **Climate Control** (page 80).*

Follow these guidelines if you have a need for recreational (RV) towing. An example of recreational towing would be towing your vehicle behind a motorhome. These guidelines are to make sure you do not damage the transmission during towing.

Do not tow your vehicle with any wheels on the ground, as vehicle or transmission damage may occur. It is recommended to tow your vehicle with all four wheels off the ground, for example when using a vehicle transport trailer. Otherwise, you cannot tow your vehicle.

Mustang (CZG) Australia, Vehicles Built From: 02-05-2016, enAUS, First Printing

OPENING THE CONVERTIBLE TOP

When you use the top, you must first unlatch it from the windshield and then use the convertible top control.

Note: *The convertible top does not operate unless the vehicle is stationary or traveling under 5 km/h. A chime sounds and a warning message appears in the instrument panel. When you slow down, the top operates.*

Note: *When you latch or unlatch the convertible top, the audio system mutes briefly. This allows the vehicle to optimize the cabin's sound quality depending on the position of the convertible top.*

To unlatch the convertible top:

1. Bring the vehicle to a complete stop. The ignition must be on. We recommend that the vehicle remains running when you open the top to prevent draining the battery.
2. Check the convertible top stowage compartment behind the rear seat to be sure it is empty. Make sure the convertible top outer surface is free of debris.
3. Move the latch handle, located above the interior mirror, down toward the windshield and rotate the handle clockwise to release the convertible top.


E174571

The windows open automatically when you press the convertible top control.

To open the convertible top:

1. Press and hold the convertible top control, located on the overhead console, until the windows are completely down and the top stores completely.
2. Release the convertible top control.

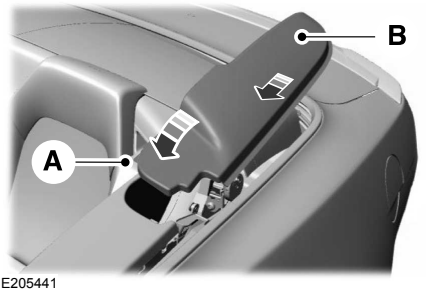

E174568

Note: *Do not store articles behind the rear seat. Articles stored in the convertible top stowage compartment may break the rear glass window when you open the top.*

Note: *Opening the convertible top when the top material is wet may cause mold or mildew.*

Using the Tonneau Caps

Your convertible top also includes two tonneau caps, one for each side of the vehicle. These caps stow inside the trunk.



E205441

A.	Leading edge.
B.	Side edge.

After opening your convertible top, place the tonneau caps between the top and your vehicle trim moulding:

1. Insert tab A under the trim.
2. When tab A is under the trim slot, angle B down so the edges slide under the surrounding moulding and secure into place between the trim edges.
3. Repeat Steps 1 and 2 on the opposite side of the vehicle to install the second tonneau cap.

CLOSING THE CONVERTIBLE TOP

Closing the convertible top is a three-step process: Remove both of the tonneau caps, press the convertible top control to close the top, and then close the latch.

To remove the tonneau caps:

1. Slide B toward the center of the vehicle to release the edges from the surrounding trim.
2. Lift up on B, and then pull the piece back to release tab A from the trim.
3. Repeat Steps 1 and 2 on the opposite side of the vehicle.
4. Make sure you stow both pieces in the trunk.



E179941

Note: *The convertible top does not operate unless the vehicle is stationary or traveling under 5 km/h. A chime sounds and a warning message appears in the instrument panel. When you slow down, the top operates.*

Note: *You must remove the tonneau caps before you are able to close the top or a chime sounds and a warning message appears in the instrument panel. Remove and stow the caps in the trunk, and then press the convertible top control again.*

Note: *When you latch or unlatch the convertible top, the audio system mutes briefly. This allows the vehicle to optimize the cabin's sound quality depending on the position of the convertible top.*

To close the convertible top:

1. Bring the vehicle to a complete stop and make sure you switch the ignition on. We recommend that the vehicle remains running when you open the top to prevent draining the battery.
2. Press and hold the convertible top control. When the convertible latch handle is within reach, make sure it is down and that you rotate it clockwise so the latch is in the fully opened position. Continue pressing the convertible top control until the windows raise completely, and the top unfolds and moves forward toward the windshield header.
3. When the top lines up evenly with the windshield header, release the convertible top control.



E174568

The final step when closing the convertible top is to lock the latch.

To lock the latch on the convertible top:

1. Pull down on the latch handle and rotate it counter-clockwise to secure the convertible top.
2. After securing the convertible top fully, push the latch handle up into the stowed position to secure the latch.



E178453

Note: *If you keep the top open for an extended period of time or if the temperature is low, the top material may shrink slightly. If this happens, pull on the latch handle to secure the top.*

BREAKING-IN

Tires

WARNING

New tires need to be run-in for approximately 300 miles (500 kilometers). During this time, you may experience different driving characteristics.

Brakes and Clutch

WARNING

Avoid heavy use of the brakes and clutch if possible for the first 100 miles (150 kilometers) in town and for the first 1000 miles (1500 kilometers) on freeways.

Engine

WARNING

Avoid driving too fast during the first 1000 miles (1500 kilometers). Vary your speed frequently and change up through the gears early. Do not labor the engine.

Vehicles With a Diesel Engine

During the first 2000 miles (3000 kilometers), you may notice a ticking sound when your vehicle slows down. This is due to adjustments of your new diesel engine and is normal.

REDUCED ENGINE PERFORMANCE

WARNING

Continued operation will increase the engine temperature and cause the engine to shut down completely.

If the engine coolant temperature gauge needle moves to the upper limit position, the engine is overheating. See **Gauges** (page 57).

You must only drive your vehicle for a short distance if the engine overheats. The distance you can travel depends on ambient temperature, vehicle load and terrain. The engine will continue to operate with limited power for a short time.

If the engine temperature continues to rise, the fuel supply to the engine will reduce. The air conditioning will switch off and the engine cooling fan will operate continually.

1. Reduce your speed gradually and stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.
2. Switch the engine off immediately to prevent severe engine damage.
3. Wait for the engine to cool down.
4. Check the coolant level. See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 153).
5. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer as soon as possible.

ECONOMICAL DRIVING

The following will help to improve fuel consumption.

Tire Pressures

Check your tire pressures regularly to optimize fuel economy. See **Technical Specifications** (page 189).

Gear Shifting

Use the highest drivable gear appropriate for the road conditions.

Anticipation

Adjust the vehicle speed and the distance to other vehicles without the need for heavy braking or acceleration.

Mustang (CZG) Australia, Vehicles Built From: 02-05-2016, enAUS, First Printing

Efficient Speed

Higher speeds use more fuel. Reduce your cruising speed on open roads.

Accessories

Do not add unnecessary accessories to the exterior of your vehicle. If you use a roof rack, remember to fold it down or remove it when not in use.

Electrical Systems

Switch off all electrical systems when not in use, for example air conditioning. Make sure you unplug any accessories from the auxiliary power points when not in use.

COLD WEATHER PRECAUTIONS

The functional operation of some components and systems can be affected at temperatures below -25°C.

DRIVING THROUGH WATER

WARNING

Do not drive through flowing or deep water as you may lose control of your vehicle.

Note: *Driving through standing water can cause vehicle damage.*

Note: *Engine damage can occur if water enters the air filter.*

Before driving through standing water, check the depth. Never drive through water that is higher than the bottom of the front rocker area of your vehicle.



E176360

When driving through standing water, drive very slowly and do not stop your vehicle. Your brake performance and traction may be limited. After driving through water and as soon as it is safe to do so:

- Lightly press the brake pedal to dry the brakes and to check that they work.
- Check that the horn works.
- Check that the exterior lights work.
- Turn the steering wheel to check that the steering power assist works.

FLOOR MATS

WARNINGS

Always use floor mats that are designed to fit the foot well of your vehicle. Only use floor mats that leave the pedal area unobstructed. Only use floor mats that are firmly secured to retention posts so that they cannot slip out of position and interfere with the pedals or impair safe operation of your vehicle in other ways.

Pedals that cannot move freely can cause loss of vehicle control and increase the risk of serious personal injury.

WARNINGS

Always make sure that the floor mats are properly attached to the retention posts in the carpet that are supplied with your vehicle. Floor mats must be properly secured to both retention posts to make sure mats do not shift out of position.

Never place floor mats or any other covering in the vehicle foot well that cannot be properly secured to prevent them from moving and interfering with the pedals or the ability to control the vehicle.

Never place floor mats or any other covering on top of already installed floor mats. Floor mats should always rest on top of vehicle carpeting surface and not another floor mat or other covering. Additional floor mats or any other covering will reduce the pedal clearance and potentially interfere with pedal operation.

Check attachment of floor mats on a regular basis. Always properly reinstall and secure floor mats that have been removed for cleaning or replacement.

Always make sure that objects cannot fall into the driver foot well while the vehicle is moving. Objects that are loose can become trapped under the pedals causing a loss of vehicle control.

Failure to properly follow floor mat installation or attachment instructions can potentially cause interference with pedal operation causing a loss of vehicle control.


E142666

To install floor mats, position the floor mat so that the eyelet is over the retention post and press down to lock in.

To remove the floor mat, reverse the installation procedure.

HAZARD WARNING FLASHERS

Note: *The hazard warning flashers will operate when the ignition is in any position or if the key is not in the ignition. If used when the engine is not running, the battery will lose charge. As a result, there may be insufficient power to restart your engine.*



The hazard flasher control is located on the instrument panel by the radio. Use it when your vehicle is disabled and is creating a safety hazard for other motorists.

- Press the flasher control and all front and rear direction indicators flash.
- Press the flasher control again to turn them off.

FIRST AID KIT

The first aid kit can be stowed under the front passenger seat or in the luggage compartment.

WARNING TRIANGLE

The warning triangle can be stowed under the front passenger seat.

FUEL SHUTOFF

WARNING



Failure to inspect and, if necessary, repair fuel leaks after a collision may increase the risk of fire and serious injury. Ford Motor Company recommends that the fuel system be inspected by an authorized dealer after any collision.

In the event of a moderate to severe collision, this vehicle includes a fuel pump shut-off feature that stops the flow of fuel to the engine. Not every impact will cause a shut-off.

Should your vehicle shut off after a collision, you may restart your vehicle. For vehicles equipped with a push button start system:

1. Press the **START/STOP** button to switch off the ignition.
2. Press the brake pedal and press the **START/STOP** button to switch on the ignition.
3. Remove your foot from the brake or clutch pedal and press the **START/STOP** button to switch off the ignition.
4. Press the brake or clutch pedal and the **START/STOP** button, or switch on the ignition only by pressing the **START/STOP** button without pressing the brake or clutch pedal. Both ways re-enable the fuel system.

Note: *When you try to restart your vehicle after a fuel shutoff, the vehicle makes sure that various systems are safe to restart. Once your vehicle determines that the systems are safe, then the vehicle will allow you to restart.*

Note: *In the event that your vehicle does not restart after your third attempt, contact an authorized dealer.*

Mustang (CZG) Australia, Vehicles Built From: 02-05-2016, enAUS, First Printing

JUMP STARTING THE VEHICLE

WARNINGS

Batteries normally produce explosive gases which can cause personal injury. Therefore, do not allow flames, sparks or lighted substances to come near the battery. When working near the battery, always shield your face and protect your eyes. Always provide correct ventilation.

Keep batteries out of reach of children. Batteries contain sulfuric acid. Avoid contact with skin, eyes or clothing. Shield your eyes when working near the battery to protect against possible splashing of acid solution. In case of acid contact with skin or eyes, flush immediately with water for a minimum of 15 minutes and get prompt medical attention. If acid is swallowed, call a physician immediately.

Use only adequatly sized cables with insulated clamps.

Preparing Your Vehicle

Note: *Do not attempt to push-start your automatic transmission vehicle. Attempting to push-start a vehicle with an automatic transmission may cause transmission damage.*

Note: *Use only a 12-volt supply to start your vehicle.*

Note: *Do not disconnect the battery of the disabled vehicle as this could damage the vehicles electrical system.*

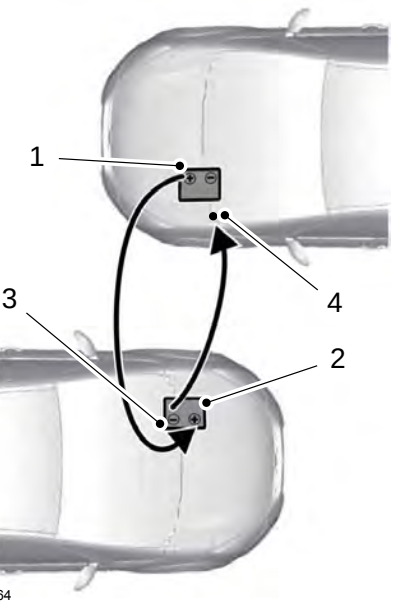
Park the booster vehicle close to the hood of the disabled vehicle, making sure the two vehicles do not touch. Switch off all accessories.

Connecting the Jumper Cables

WARNING

Do not attach the cables to fuel lines, engine rocker covers, the intake manifold or electrical components as grounding points. Stay clear of moving parts. To avoid reverse polarity connections, make sure that you correctly identify the positive (+) and negative (-) terminals on both the disabled and booster vehicles before connecting the cables.

Note: *In the illustration, the bottom vehicle represents the booster vehicle.*



E142664

1. Connect the positive (+) jumper cable to the positive (+) terminal of the discharged battery.

2. Connect the other end of the positive (+) cable to the positive (+) terminal of the booster vehicle battery.
3. Connect the negative (-) cable to the negative (-) terminal of the booster vehicle battery.
4. Make the final connection of the negative (-) cable to an exposed metal part of the stalled vehicle's engine, away from the battery and the fuel injection system, or connect the negative (-) cable to a ground connection point if available.



E204033

Note: *You can use the optional connection point location shown above to ground your vehicle.*

WARNING

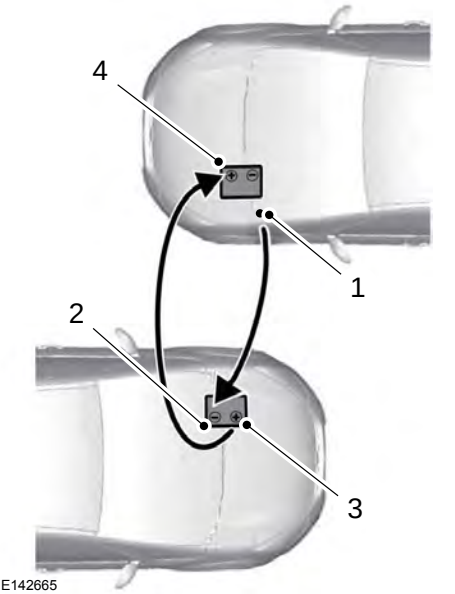
Do not connect the end of the second cable to the negative (-) terminal of the battery to be jumped. A spark may cause an explosion of the gases that surround the battery.

Jump Starting

1. Start the engine of the booster vehicle and rev the engine moderately, or press the accelerator gently to keep your engine speed between 2000 and 3000 RPM as shown in your tachometer.
2. Start the engine of the disabled vehicle.
3. Once the disabled vehicle has been started, run both vehicle engines for an additional three minutes before disconnecting the jumper cables.

Removing the Jumper Cables

Remove the jumper cables in the reverse order that they were connected.



E142665

1. Remove the jumper cable from the ground metal surface or connecting point, if available.
2. Remove the negative (-) jumper cable from the disabled vehicle.
3. Remove the jumper cable on the negative (-) terminal of the booster vehicle battery.
4. Remove the jumper cable from the positive (+) terminal of the booster vehicle battery.

5. Remove the jumper cable from the positive (+) terminal of the disabled vehicle battery.

Allow the engine to idle for at least one minute.

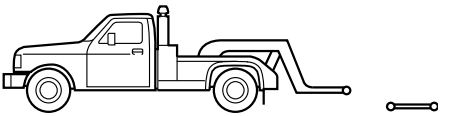
POST-CRASH ALERT SYSTEM

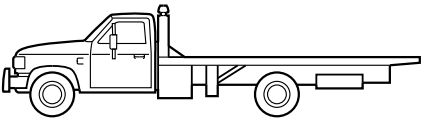
The system flashes the direction indicator lamps in the event of a serious impact that deploys an airbag (front, side, side curtain or Safety Canopy) or the seatbelt pretensioners.

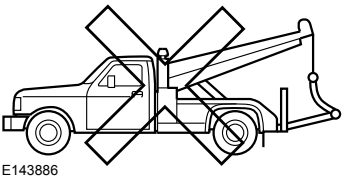
The lamps turn off when:

- You press the hazard control button.
- You press the panic button (if equipped) on the remote entry transmitter.
- Your vehicle runs out of power.

TRANSPORTING THE VEHICLE







E143886

If you need to have your vehicle towed, contact a professional towing service or, if you are a member of a roadside assistance program, your roadside assistance service provider.

We recommend the use of a wheel lift and dollies or flatbed equipment to tow your vehicle. Do not tow with a slingbelt. Ford Motor Company has not approved a slingbelt towing procedure. Vehicle damage may occur if towed incorrectly, or by any other means.

Ford Motor Company produces a towing manual for all authorized tow truck operators. Have your tow truck operator refer to this manual for proper hook-up and towing procedures for your vehicle.

It is acceptable to have your front-wheel drive vehicle towed from the front if using proper wheel lift equipment to raise the front wheels off the ground. When towing in this manner, the rear wheels can remain on the ground.

Front-wheel drive vehicles must have the front wheels placed on a tow dolly when towing your vehicle from the rear using wheel lift equipment. This prevents damage to the transmission.

Towing an all-wheel or four-wheel drive vehicle requires that all wheels be off the ground, such as using a wheel lift and dollies or flatbed equipment. This prevents damage to the transmission, all-wheel or four-wheel drive system and vehicle.

TOWING POINTS

Due to local market requirements in some countries, some vehicles may be equipped with a recovery hook.

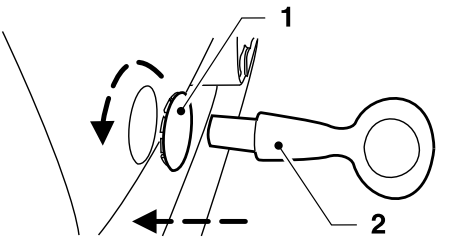
Recovery Hook Location

If your vehicle is equipped with a screw-in recovery hook, it is located with the spare tire kit.

Installing the Recovery Hook

There is an installation point for the recovery hook located behind the fascia.

Note: *The screw-in recovery hook has a left-hand thread. Turn it counterclockwise to install it. Make sure that the recovery hook is fully tightened.*



E146284



E188420

Remove the recovery hook cover by prying it off at the notch with a screwdriver or similar object.

Note: *Use a soft cloth to cover the prying tool. This helps prevent scratch marks to the vehicle's paint.*

FUSE SPECIFICATION CHART

Power Distribution Box

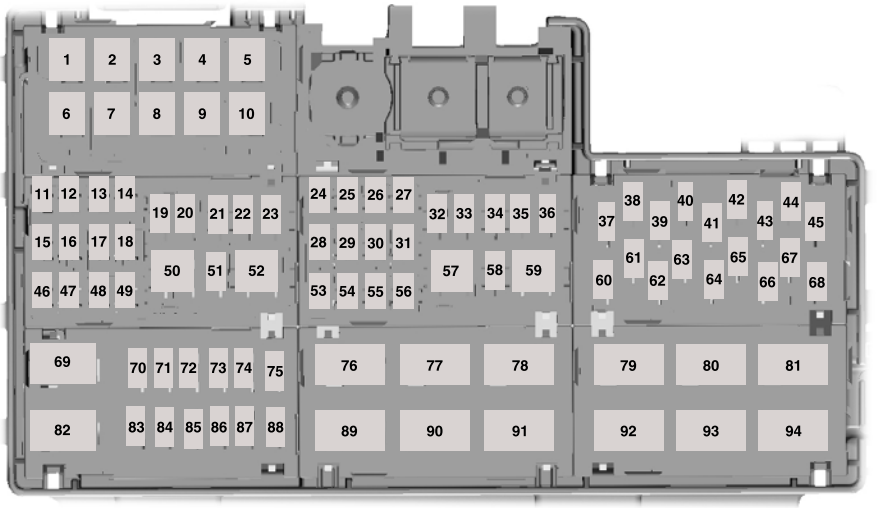
WARNINGS

Always disconnect the battery before servicing high current fuses.

To reduce risk of electrical shock, always replace the cover to the power distribution box before reconnecting the battery or refilling fluid reservoirs.

The power distribution box is located in the engine compartment. It has high-current fuses that protect your vehicle's main electrical systems from overloads.

If you disconnect and reconnect the battery, you will need to reset some features. See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 159).



E174563

Fuse or relay number	Fuse amp rating	Protected components
1	—	Not used.
2	—	Not used.
3	—	Not used.

Fuse or relay number	Fuse amp rating	Protected components
4	—	Not used.
5	50A*	Automatic brake system pump.
6	50A*	Body control module.
7	60A*	Body control module.
8	50A*	Body control module.
9	40A*	Rear window defroster.
10	40A*	Blower motor.
11	30A**	Left-hand front window.
12	30A**	Driver seat.
13	30A**	Passenger seat.
14	30A**	Climate-controlled seat module.
15	20A**	Convertible top motor.
16	—	Not used.
17	20A**	Convertible top motor.
18	—	Not used.
19	20A***	Steering column lock relay.
20	10A***	Brake on-off switch.
21	20A***	Horn.
22	10A***	Powertrain control module relay.
23	10A***	Air conditioning clutch.
24	30A**	Voltage quality module.
25	—	Not used.
26	25A**	Windshield wiper motor.
27	—	Not used.
28	30A**	Automatic brake system valve.
29	30A**	Electronic fan 1.
30	30A**	Starter motor solenoid.

Fuse or relay number	Fuse amp rating	Protected components
31	40A**	Electronic fan 3.
32	10A***	Latch relay coil.
33	20A***	Left-hand high-intensity discharge headlamps.
34	—	Not used.
35	20A***	Right-hand high-intensity discharge headlamps.
36	10A***	Alt sense.
37	—	Not used.
38	20A***	Vehicle power 1.
39	—	Not used.
40	20A***	Vehicle power 2.
41	15A***	Fuel injectors.
42	15A***	Vehicle power 3.
43	—	Not used.
44	15A***	Vehicle power 4.
45	—	Not used.
46	—	Not used.
47	—	Not used.
48	—	Not used.
49	30A**	Fuel pump.
50	—	Steering column lock relay.
51	—	Not used.
52	—	Horn relay.
53	20A**	Cigar lighter.
54	20A**	Auxiliary power point.
55	25A**	Electronic fan 2.
56	—	Not used.

Fuse or relay number	Fuse amp rating	Protected components
57	—	Air conditioning clutch relay.
58	—	Not used.
59	—	Not used.
60	5A***	Powertrain control module.
61	—	Not used.
62	5A***	Anti-lock brakes run-start switch.
63	—	Not used.
64	5A***	Electronic power assist steering.
65	—	Not used.
66	5A***	Rear view camera. Air conditioning compressor relay coils.
67	—	Not used.
68	10A***	Headlamp leveling switch.
69	—	Auxiliary power point relay.
70	10A***	Heated exterior mirrors.
71	—	Not used.
72	5A***	Rain sensor module.
73	—	Not used.
74	5A***	Mass air flow sensor.
75	—	Not used.
76	—	Rear window defroster relay.
77	—	Electronic cooling fan 2 relay.
78	—	Left-hand high-intensity discharge headlamp relay.
79	—	Right-hand high-intensity-discharge headlamp relay.
80	—	Windshield wiper relay.
81	—	Starter motor solenoid relay.

Fuse or relay number	Fuse amp rating	Protected components
82	—	Powertrain control module relay.
83	—	Not used.
84	—	Not used.
85	—	Not used.
86	—	Not used.
87	—	Not used.
88	—	Not used.
89	—	Electronic fan 1 relay.
90	—	Not used.
91	—	Electronic fan 3 relay.
92	—	Blower motor relay.
93	—	Not used.
94	—	Fuel pump relay.

*J-case fuses.

**M-case fuses.

***Micro fuses.

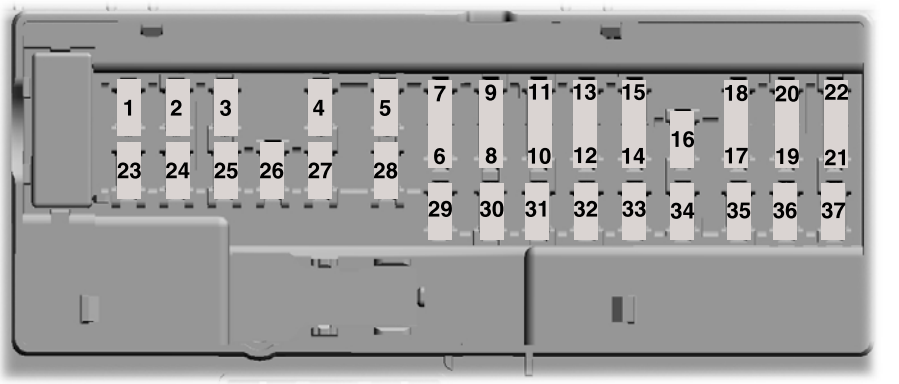
Passenger Compartment Fuse Panel

The fuse panel is in the right-hand side of the passenger footwell behind a trim panel and plastic key code card.

To remove the trim panel, lift it from the rear retaining hooks, while pulling it toward you and swinging it away from the side. To reinstall it, line up the tabs with the grooves on the panel, drop the panel back into place, and then push it shut.

To reach the fuse panel, first remove the key code card.

After replacing a fuse, return the key code card to the original position. To reinstall the trim panel, lineup the tabs with the grooves on the panel, drop the panel back into place, and then push it shut to reinstall the trim panel.



E174564

Fuse or relay number	Fuse amp rating	Protected components
1	10A	Demand lamps.
2	7.5A	Power mirror memory module.
3	20A	Driver console unlock.
4	—	Not used.
5	20A	Subwoofer amplifier.
6	—	Not used.
7	—	Not used.
8	—	Not used.
9	—	Not used.
10	—	Not used.
11	—	Not used.

Fuse or relay number	Fuse amp rating	Protected components
12	7.5A	Climate control module.
13	7.5A	Gateway module. Steering column control module. Instrument cluster.
14	—	Not used.
15	10A	Gateway module.
16	15A	Decklid release.
17	5A	Battery backed sounder.
18	5A	Intrusion sensor module.
19	7.5A	Passenger airbag deactivation indicator.
20	—	Not used.
21	5A	In-vehicle temperature and humidity sensor.
22	5A	Occupant classification system module.
23	10A	Switches. Power windows. Rear-view mirror.
24	20A	Central lock unlock.
25	30A	Not used (spare).
26	30A	Right-hand front-window motor.
27	30A	Amplifier.
28	20A	Auxiliary body module.
29	30A	Left-hand rear-window power.
30	30A	Right-hand rear-window power.
31	—	Not used.
32	10A	Remote keyless entry. Multi-function display. SYNC. Global positioning system module. Gauges.
33	20A	Audio head unit.

Fuse or relay number	Fuse amp rating	Protected components
34	30A	Run-start bus.
35	5A	Restraints control module.
36	15A	Auxiliary body module.
37	20A	Power distribution box run-start bus.
—	30A	Not used (spare).

CHANGING A FUSE

Fuses

WARNING

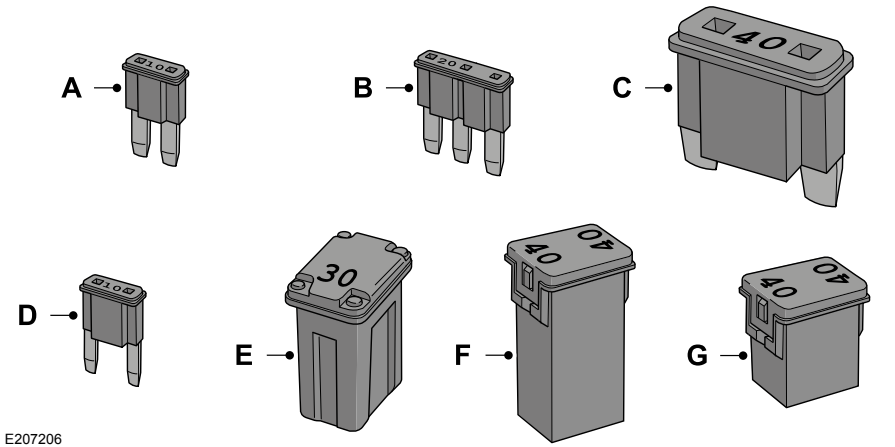
Always replace a fuse with one that has the specified amperage rating. Using a fuse with a higher amperage rating can cause severe wire damage and could start a fire.



E217331

If electrical components in the vehicle are not working, a fuse may have blown. Blown fuses are identified by a broken wire within the fuse. Check the appropriate fuses before replacing any electrical components.

Fuse Types



Callout	Fuse Type
A	Micro 2
B	Micro 3
C	Maxi
D	Mini
E	M Case
F	J Case
G	J Case Low Profile

GENERAL INFORMATION

WARNINGS

Switch the ignition off and apply the parking brake.

Do not touch the electronic ignition system parts after you have switched the ignition on or when the engine is running. The system operates at high voltage. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

Keep your hands and clothing clear of the engine cooling fan.

Under certain conditions, the engine cooling fan may continue to run for several minutes after you switch your vehicle off.

Make sure that you fit filler caps securely after carrying out maintenance checks.

Have your vehicle serviced regularly to help maintain its roadworthiness and resale value. There is a large network of Ford authorized dealers that are there to help you with their professional servicing expertise. Authorized repairers are best qualified to service your vehicle properly and expertly, with a wide range of highly specialized tools.

In addition to regular servicing, we recommend that you carry out the following checks.

Check Daily

- Exterior lamps.
- Interior lamps.
- Warning lamps and indicators.

Check When Refueling

- Brake fluid level. See **Brake Fluid Check** (page 158).
- Washer fluid level. See **Washer Fluid Check** (page 158).
- Tire pressures. See **Technical Specifications** (page 189).
- Tire condition. See **Wheels and Tires** (page 172).

Check Monthly

- Engine oil level. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 153).
- Engine coolant level. See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 153).
- Pipes, hoses and reservoirs for leaks.
- Air conditioning operation.
- Parking brake operation.
- Horn operation.
- Tightness of lug nuts. See **Technical Specifications** (page 189).

OPENING AND CLOSING THE HOOD

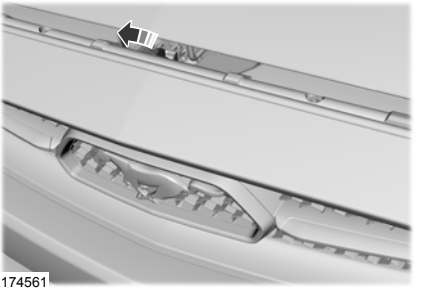
Opening the Hood



E142457

1. Inside the vehicle, pull the hood release handle located under the left-hand side of the instrument panel.

2. Slightly lift the hood.


E174561

3. Release the hood latch by pushing the secondary release lever to your left-hand side.


E87786

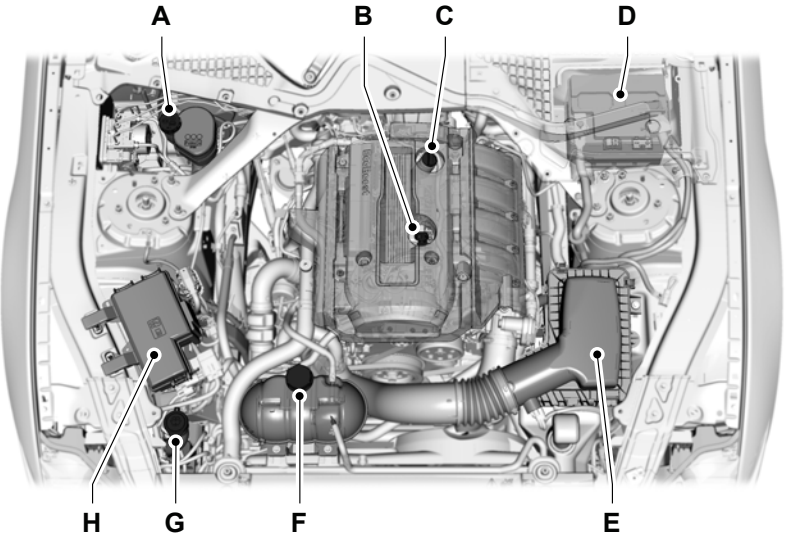
4. Open the hood. Support the hood with the strut.

Closing the Hood

1. Remove the hood strut from the catch and secure it correctly after use.
2. Lower the hood and allow it to drop under its own weight for the last 20–30 cm.

Note: *Make sure that the hood is correctly closed.*

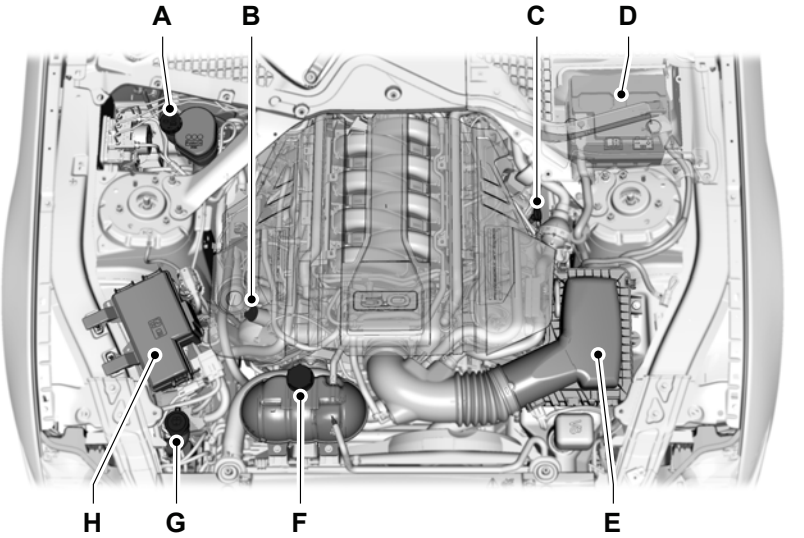
UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - 2.3L ECOBOOST™



E227468

A Brake fluid reservoir. See **Brake Fluid Check** (page 158).
B Engine oil dipstick. See **Engine Oil Dipstick** (page 153).
C Engine oil filler cap. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 153).
D Battery. See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 159).
E Air filter.
F Engine coolant reservoir. See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 153).
G Washer system fluid reservoir. See **Washer Fluid Check** (page 158).
H Engine compartment fuse box. See **Fuse Specification Chart** (page 140).

UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - 5.0L



E227469

A Brake fluid reservoir. See **Brake Fluid Check** (page 158).
B Engine oil filler cap. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 153).
C Engine oil dipstick. See **Engine Oil Dipstick** (page 153).
D Battery. See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 159).
E Air filter.
F Engine coolant reservoir. See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 153).
G Washer system fluid reservoir. See **Washer Fluid Check** (page 158).
H Engine compartment fuse box. See **Fuse Specification Chart** (page 140).

Mustang (CZG) Australia, Vehicles Built From: 02-05-2016, enAUS, First Printing

ENGINE OIL DIPSTICK



E161560

A	MIN
B	MAX

ENGINE OIL CHECK

1. Make sure that your vehicle is on level ground.
2. Check the oil level before starting the engine, or switch the engine off and wait 15 minutes for the oil to drain into the oil pan.
3. Remove the dipstick and wipe it with a clean, lint-free cloth. Replace the dipstick and remove it again to check the oil level.

If the oil level is at the minimum mark, add oil immediately.

Do not use supplemental engine oil additives because they are unnecessary and could lead to engine damage that may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.

Note: *Make sure that the oil level is between the minimum and the maximum marks.*

Note: *The oil consumption of new engines reaches its normal level after approximately 5,000 km.*

Adding Engine Oil

WARNINGS

Only add oil when the engine is cold. If the engine is hot, wait 10 minutes for the engine to cool down.

Do not remove the filler cap when the engine is running.

Clean the area surrounding the engine oil filler cap before you remove it.

To top up the engine oil level do the following:

1. Remove the engine oil filler cap. See **Maintenance** (page 149).
2. Add engine oil that meets Ford specifications.
3. Replace the engine oil filler cap. Turn it clockwise until you feel a strong resistance.

Note: *Do not add oil further than the maximum mark. Oil levels above the maximum mark may cause engine damage.*

Note: *Soak up any spillage with an absorbent cloth immediately.*

ENGINE COOLANT CHECK

WARNINGS

Do not add engine coolant when the engine is hot. Steam and scalding liquids released from a hot cooling system can burn you badly. Also, spilling coolant on hot engine parts can burn you.

Do not put engine coolant in the windshield washer fluid container. If sprayed on the windshield, engine coolant could make it difficult to see through the windshield.

WARNINGS

To reduce the risk of personal injury, make sure the engine is cool before unscrewing the coolant pressure relief cap. The cooling system is under pressure. Steam and hot liquid can come out forcefully when you loosen the cap slightly.

Do not add coolant further than the **MAX** mark.

When the engine is cold, check the concentration and level of the coolant at the intervals listed in the scheduled maintenance information.

Note: *Make sure that the coolant level is between the **MIN** and **MAX** marks on the coolant reservoir.*

Note: *Coolant expands when it is hot. The level may extend beyond the **MAX** mark.*

Maintain coolant concentration within 48% to 50%, which equates to a freeze point between -30ºF (-34ºC) and -34ºF (-37ºC). Coolant concentration should be checked using a refractometer. We do not recommend the use of hydrometers or coolant test strips for measuring coolant concentration.

Adding Coolant

WARNING

Never remove the coolant reservoir cap while the engine is running or hot.

Note: *Automotive fluids are not interchangeable. Take care not to put engine coolant in the windshield washer fluid reservoir or windshield washer fluid in the engine coolant reservoir.*

Note: *Do not use stop leak pellets, cooling system sealants, or non-specified additives as they can cause damage to the engine cooling or heating systems. Resulting component damage may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.*

It is very important to use prediluted coolant approved to the correct specification in order to avoid plugging the small passageways in the engine cooling system. Do not mix different colors or types of coolant in your vehicle. Mixing of engine coolants or using an incorrect coolant may harm the engine or cooling system components and may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.

Note: *If prediluted coolant is not available, use the approved concentrated coolant diluting it to 50/50 with distilled water. Using water that has not been deionised may contribute to deposit formation, corrosion and plugging of the small cooling system passageways.*

Note: *Coolants marketed for all makes and models may not be approved to Ford specifications and may cause damage to the cooling system. Resulting component damage may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.*

If the coolant level is at or below the minimum mark, add prediluted coolant immediately.

To top up the coolant level do the following:

1. Unscrew the cap slowly. Any pressure escapes as you unscrew the cap.
2. Add prediluted coolant approved to the correct specification.
3. Add enough prediluted coolant to reach the correct level.
4. Replace the coolant reservoir cap, turn it clockwise until you feel a strong resistance.

Mustang (CZG) Australia, Vehicles Built From: 02-05-2016, enAUS, First Printing

5. Check the coolant level in the coolant reservoir the next few times you drive your vehicle. If necessary, add enough prediluted engine coolant to bring the coolant level to the correct level.

If you have to add more than 1 L of engine coolant per month, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. Operating an engine with a low level of coolant can result in engine overheating and possible engine damage.

Note: *During normal vehicle operation, the coolant may change color from orange to pink or light red. As long as the coolant is clear and uncontaminated, this color change does not indicate the coolant has degraded nor does it require the coolant to be drained, the system to be flushed, or the coolant to be replaced.*

Note: *In case of emergency, you can add a large amount of water without coolant in order to reach a vehicle service location. Water alone, without coolant, can cause engine damage from corrosion, overheating or freezing. When you reach a service location, you must have the cooling system drained and refilled with prediluted coolant approved to the correct specification.*

Do not use the following as a coolant substitute:

- Alcohol.
- Methanol.
- Brine.
- Any coolant mixed with alcohol or methanol antifreeze.

Alcohol and other liquids can cause engine damage from overheating or freezing.

Do not add extra inhibitors or additives to the coolant. These can be harmful and compromise the corrosion protection of the coolant.

Recycled Coolant

We do not recommend the use of recycled coolant as an approved recycling process is not yet available.

Dispose of used engine coolant in an appropriate manner. Follow your community's regulations and standards for recycling and disposing of automotive fluids.

Severe Climates

If you drive in extremely cold climates:

- It may be necessary to increase the coolant concentration above 50%.
- A coolant concentration of 60% provides improved freeze point protection. Coolant concentrations above 60% decrease the overheat protection characteristics of the coolant and may cause engine damage.

If you drive in extremely hot climates:

- You can decrease the coolant concentration to 40%.
- Coolant concentrations below 40% decrease the freeze and corrosion protection characteristics of the coolant and may cause engine damage.

Vehicles driven year-round in non-extreme climates should use prediluted coolant for optimum cooling system and engine protection.

Coolant Change

At specific mileage intervals, as listed in the scheduled maintenance information, the coolant should be changed. Add prediluted coolant approved to the correct specification.

Fail-Safe Cooling

Fail-safe cooling allows you to temporarily drive your vehicle before any incremental component damage occurs. The fail-safe distance depends on ambient temperature, vehicle load and terrain.

How Fail-Safe Cooling Works

If the engine begins to overheat, the coolant temperature gauge moves toward the red zone:




A warning lamp illuminates and a message may appear in the information display.

If the engine reaches a preset over-temperature condition, the engine automatically switches to alternating cylinder operation. Each disabled cylinder acts as an air pump and cools the engine.

When this occurs, your vehicle still operates, however:

- Engine power is limited.
- The air conditioning system turns off.

Continued operation increases the engine temperature, causing the engine to completely shut down. Your steering and braking effort increases in this situation.

When the engine temperature cools, you can re-start the engine. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible to minimize engine damage.

When Fail-Safe Mode Is Activated

WARNINGS



Fail-safe mode is for use during emergencies only. Operate your vehicle in fail-safe mode only as long as necessary to bring your vehicle to rest in a safe location and seek immediate repairs. When in fail-safe mode, your vehicle will have limited power, will not be able to maintain high-speed operation, and may completely shut down without warning, potentially losing engine power, power steering assist, and power brake assist, which may increase the possibility of a crash resulting in serious injury.



Never remove the coolant reservoir cap while the engine is running or hot.

Your vehicle has limited engine power when in the fail-safe mode, drive your vehicle with caution. Your vehicle does not maintain high-speed operation and the engine may operate poorly.

Remember that the engine is capable of automatically shutting down to prevent engine damage. In this situation:

1. Pull off the road as soon as safely possible and switch the engine off.
2. If you are a member of a roadside assistance program, we recommend that you contact your roadside assistance service provider.
3. If this is not possible, wait a short period for the engine to cool.
4. Check the coolant level. If the coolant level is at or below the minimum mark, add prediluted coolant immediately.
5. When the engine temperature cools, you can re-start the engine. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible to minimize engine damage.

Note: *Driving your vehicle without repair increases the chance of engine damage.*

Engine Coolant Temperature Management (If Equipped)

WARNING

To reduce the risk of crash and injury, be prepared that the vehicle speed may reduce and the vehicle may not be able to accelerate with full power until the coolant temperature reduces.

If you tow a trailer with your vehicle, the engine may temporarily reach higher a temperature during severe operating conditions, for example ascending a long or steep grade in high ambient temperatures.

At this time, you may notice the coolant temperature gauge moves toward the red zone and a message may appear in the information display.

You may notice a reduction in vehicle speed caused by reduced engine power. In order to manage the engine coolant temperature. Your vehicle may enter this mode if certain high-temperature and high-load conditions take place. The amount of speed reduction depends on vehicle loading, grade and ambient temperature. If this occurs, there is no need to pull off the road. You can continue to drive your vehicle.

The air conditioning may automatically turn on and off during severe operating conditions to protect the engine from overheating. When the coolant temperature decreases to the normal operating temperature, the air conditioning turns on.

If the coolant temperature gauge moves fully into the red zone, or if the coolant temperature warning or service engine soon messages appear in your information display, do the following:

1. Pull off the road as soon as safely possible and shift the transmission into park **(P)**.
2. Leave the engine running until the coolant temperature gauge needle returns to the normal position. After several minutes, if the temperature does not drop, follow the remaining steps.
3. Switch the engine off and wait for it to cool. Check the coolant level.
4. If the coolant level is at or below the minimum mark, add prediluted coolant immediately.
5. If the coolant level is normal, restart the engine and continue.

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION FLUID CHECK

If required, have an authorized dealer check and change the transmission fluid at the correct service interval.

The automatic transmission does not have a transmission fluid dipstick.

Refer to your scheduled maintenance information for scheduled intervals for fluid checks and changes. Your transmission does not consume fluid. However, if the transmission slips, shifts slowly or if you notice a sign of leaking fluid, contact an authorized dealer.

Do not use supplemental transmission fluid additives, treatments or cleaning agents. The use of these materials may affect transmission operation and result in damage to internal transmission components.

BRAKE FLUID CHECK

WARNINGS

Do not use any fluid other than the recommended brake fluid as this will reduce brake efficiency. Use of incorrect fluid could result in the loss of vehicle control, serious personal injury or death.

Only use brake fluid from a sealed container. Contamination with dirt, water, petroleum products or other materials may result in brake system damage or failure. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in the loss of vehicle control, serious personal injury or death.

Do not allow the fluid to touch your skin or eyes. If this happens, rinse the affected areas immediately with plenty of water and contact your physician.

A fluid level between the **MAX** and **MIN** lines is within the normal operating range and there is no need to add fluid. A fluid level not in the normal operating range could compromise the performance of the system. Have your vehicle checked immediately.



E170684

To avoid fluid contamination, the reservoir cap must remain in place and fully tight, unless you are adding fluid.

Only use fluid that meets Ford specifications.

CLUTCH FLUID CHECK - MANUAL TRANSMISSION

The clutch and brake systems share the same fluid reservoir. See **Brake Fluid Check** (page 158).

WASHER FLUID CHECK

When adding fluid, use a mixture of washer fluid and water to help prevent freezing in cold weather and improve the cleaning capability. For information on fluid dilution, refer to the product instructions.

FUEL FILTER

Your vehicle is equipped with a lifetime fuel filter that is integrated with the fuel tank. Regular maintenance or replacement is not needed.

CHANGING THE 12V BATTERY

WARNINGS

Batteries normally produce explosive gases which can cause personal injury. Therefore, do not allow flames, sparks or lighted substances to come near the battery. When working near the battery, always shield your face and protect your eyes. Always provide correct ventilation.

When lifting a plastic-cased battery, excessive pressure on the end walls could cause acid to flow through the vent caps, resulting in personal injury and damage to the vehicle or battery. Lift the battery with a battery carrier or with your hands on opposite corners.

Keep batteries out of reach of children. Batteries contain sulfuric acid. Avoid contact with skin, eyes or clothing. Shield your eyes when working near the battery to protect against possible splashing of acid solution. In case of acid contact with skin or eyes, flush immediately with water for a minimum of 15 minutes and get prompt medical attention. If acid is swallowed, call a physician immediately.

Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds. Wash hands after handling.

For vehicles with Auto-Start-Stop the battery requirement is different. You must replace the battery with one of exactly the same specification.

The battery is located in the engine compartment. See **Under Hood Overview** (page 151).

Your vehicle has a maintenance-free battery. It does not require additional water during service.

If your vehicle battery has a cover, make sure you correctly install it after cleaning or replacing the battery.

For longer, trouble-free operation, keep the top of the battery clean and dry and the battery cables tightly fastened to the battery terminals. If any corrosion is present on the battery or terminals, remove the cables from the terminals and clean with a wire brush. You can neutralize the acid with a solution of baking soda and water.

We recommend that you disconnect the negative battery cable terminal from the battery if you plan to store your vehicle for an extended period.

To maintain correct operation of the battery management system, if you add any electrical devices to your vehicle, do not connect the ground connection directly to the negative battery terminal. A connection at the negative battery terminal can cause inaccurate measurements of the battery condition and potential incorrect system operation.

Note: *Electrical accessories or components added to your vehicle by you or an authorized dealer, may adversely affect battery performance, durability and the performance of other electrical systems on your vehicle.*

If a replacement battery is required, we recommend you use a Ford replacement battery that matches the electrical requirements of your vehicle.

If you disconnect or replace the battery and your vehicle has an automatic transmission, transmission must relearn its adaptive strategy. Because of this, the transmission may shift firmly when first driven. This is normal operation while the transmission fully updates its operation to optimum shift feel.

Remove and Reinstall the Battery

To disconnect or remove the battery, do the following:

1. Apply the parking brake and switch the ignition off.
2. Switch all electrical equipment off, for example lights and radio.
3. Wait a minimum of two minutes before disconnecting the battery.*
4. Disconnect the negative battery cable terminal first.
5. Disconnect the positive battery cable terminal last.
6. Remove the battery securing clamp.
7. Remove the battery.
8. Install in the reverse order.**

*The engine management system has a power hold function and remains powered for a period after you switch the ignition off. This is to allow diagnostic and adaptive tables to be stored. Disconnecting the battery without waiting can cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

**Before reconnecting the battery, make sure the ignition remains switched off.

Note: *If you only disconnect the negative battery cable terminal, make sure it is isolated or placed away from the battery terminal to avoid un-intended connection or arcing.*

Note: *Make sure the battery cable terminals are fully tightened.*

Note: *If you disconnect or replace the battery, you must reset the clock and the pre-set radio stations once the battery is reconnected.*

Battery Disposal



Make sure that you dispose of old batteries in an environmentally friendly way. Seek advice from your local authority about recycling old batteries.

CHECKING THE WIPER BLADES



E142463

Run the tip of your fingers over the edge of the blade to check for roughness.

Clean the wiper blades with washer fluid or water applied with a soft sponge or cloth.

CHANGING THE WIPER BLADES

Replace the wiper blades at least annually for optimum performance.

You can improve poor wiper quality by cleaning the wiper blades and the windshield.

Service Position

Note: *Do not hold the wiper blade when moving the wiper arm to the service position.*



E211254

Set the windshield wipers in the service position to change the wiper blades. You can manually move the wiper arms to the service position when you switch the ignition off. The windshield wipers return to the starting position when you switch the ignition on.

1. Switch the ignition off.
2. Manually move the wiper arms to the service position.

Note: *You cannot move the wiper arms to the service position manually when you switch the ignition on.*

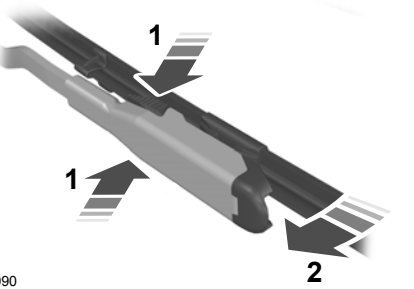
Note: *You can use the service position to provide easier access to the wiper blades for freeing them from snow and ice.*

Note: *Make sure the windshield is free from snow and ice before you switch the ignition on.*

Changing the Windshield Wiper Blades

Note: *Do not hold the wiper blade when lifting the wiper arm.*

Note: *Make sure that the wiper arm does not spring back against the glass when the wiper blade is not attached.*



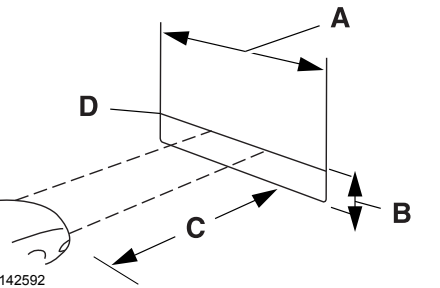
E129990

1. Lift the wiper arm and then press the wiper blade locking buttons together.
2. Slightly rotate the wiper blade.
3. Remove the wiper blade.
4. Install in the reverse order.

ADJUSTING THE HEADLAMPS

Vertical Aim

Headlamp Aim Target



E142592

A 8 ft (2.4 m).

B Center height of headlamp to the ground.

C 25 ft (7.6 m).

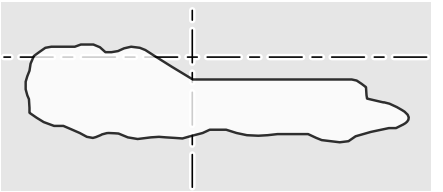
D Horizontal reference line.

Vertical Aim Adjustment

1. Park your vehicle on a level surface approximately 7.6 m away from a vertical wall or screen.
2. Apply the parking brake.
3. Measure the height from the center of the headlamp to the ground.

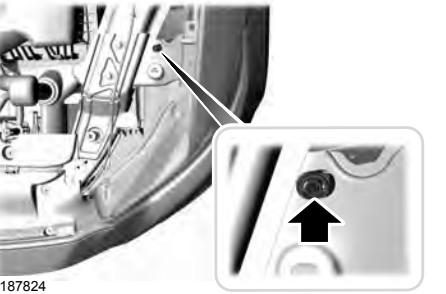
Note: *There may be an identifying mark on the lens to help you locate the center of the headlamp bulb.*

4. Mark a horizontal reference line on the vertical wall or screen that is a minimum of 2.4 m long.
5. Switch the low beam headlamps on and open the hood.



E209826

6. There is a distinct change from light to dark in the right-hand portion of the headlamp beam pattern. Position the top edge of this cut-off 7.5 cm below the horizontal reference line.



E187824

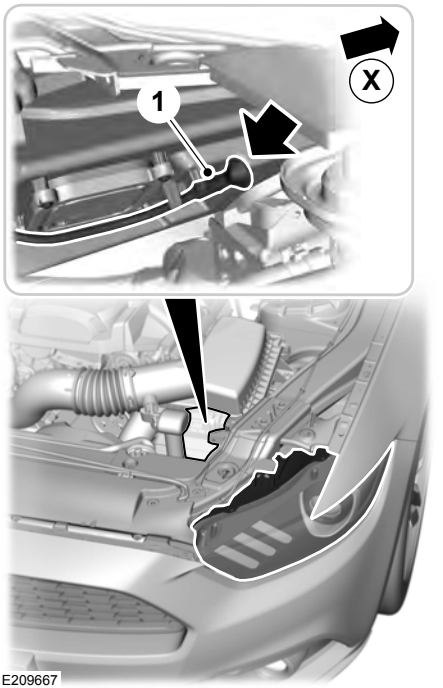
7. To adjust the vertical aim, use a suitable tool to rotate the adjuster clockwise or counterclockwise.

Note: *To see a clearer light pattern while adjusting one headlamp, block the light from the other headlamp.*

8. Close the hood and switch the low beam headlamps off.

Horizontal Aim Adjustment

Horizontal aim should not be required although it is adjustable.



E209667

1. Locate the adjuster within the extension tube attached to the rear of the headlamp assembly.
2. To adjust the horizontal aim, use a suitable tool to rotate the adjuster clockwise or counterclockwise.

Note: *X: Toward the front of the vehicle.*

CHANGING A BULB

WARNINGS

Switch the lamps and the ignition off. Failure to do so could result in serious personal injury.

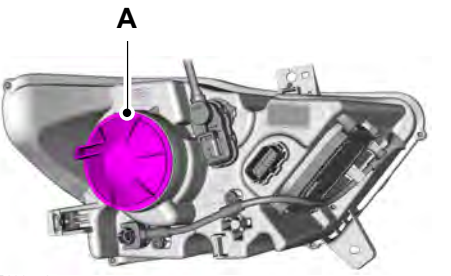
WARNINGS

Bulbs become hot when in use. Let them cool down before you remove them.

Use the correct specification bulb. See **Bulb Specification Chart** (page 166).

The following instructions describe how to remove the bulbs. Install in the reverse order unless otherwise stated.

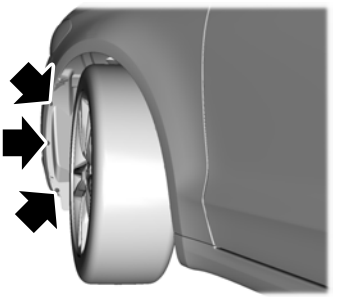
Headlamp



E199556

A Headlamp high and low beam.

Front Side Lamp


E159695

1. Remove the three wheel arch liner fasteners.


E176616

2. Remove the outermost engine undershield fastener.
3. Pull the wheel liner back toward the tire to gain access to the bulb.
4. Remove the bulb holder by pulling it straight out.
5. Remove the bulb by pulling it straight out.

Headlamp Low and High Beam

Your vehicle has high intensity discharge lamps. These lamps operate at a high voltage. Contact an authorized dealer if they fail.

Front Direction Indicator

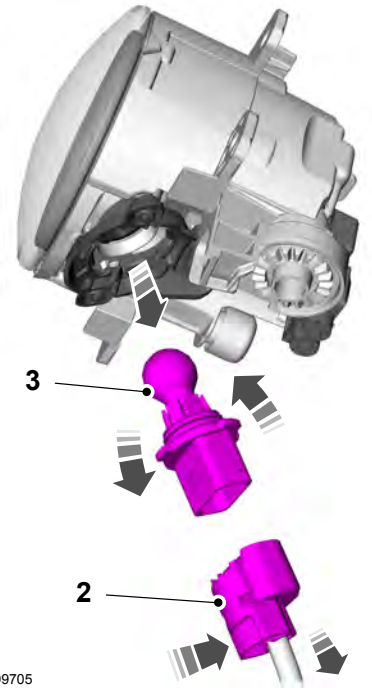

E180889

1. Reposition the wheel arch liner, see **Front Side Lamp**.
2. Disconnect the electrical connector.
3. Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise and remove it.
4. Remove the bulb by pulling it straight out.

Daytime Running Lamp

Note: *Do not touch the bulb glass.*

1. Reposition the wheel arch liner, see **Front Side Lamp**.



E199705

2. Disconnect the electrical connector.
3. Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise and remove it.

Note: *You cannot separate the bulb from the bulb holder.*

Front Fog Lamp

Note: *Do not touch the bulb glass.*

1. Reposition the wheel arch liner, see **Front Side Lamp**.



E174588

2. Disconnect the electrical connector.
3. Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise and remove it.

Note: *You cannot separate the bulb from the bulb holder.*

LED Lamps

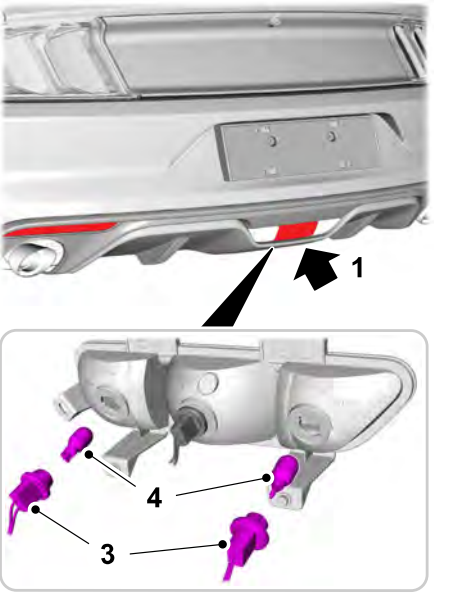
LED lamps are not serviceable items. Contact an authorized dealer if they fail.

The following are LED lamps:

- Rear lamp.
- Brake lamp.
- Central high mounted brake lamp.
- Rear direction indicator lamp.
- License plate lamp.

Reversing Lamp

1. Locate the reverse lamp bulb under the rear bumper of your vehicle. To access the bulb, reach behind the bumper.
2. Disconnect the electrical connector.

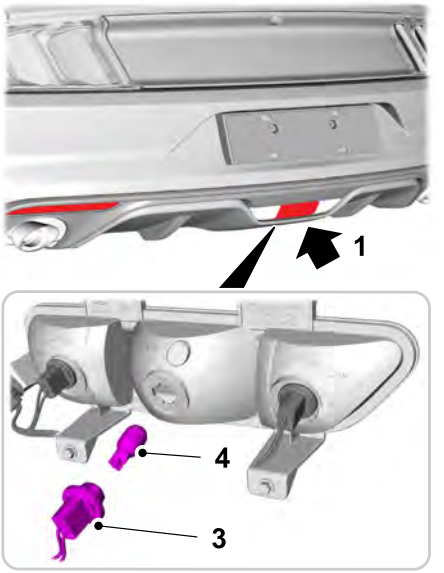


E199707

3. Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise and remove it.
4. Remove the bulb by pulling it straight out.

Rear Fog Lamp

1. Locate the rear fog lamp bulb under the rear bumper of your vehicle. To access the bulb, reach behind the bumper.
2. Disconnect the electrical connector.



E199706

3. Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise and remove it.
4. Remove the bulb by pulling it straight out.

BULB SPECIFICATION CHART

Exterior Lamps

Lamp	Specification	Power (Watt)
Front side lamp.	W5W	5
Front direction indicator.	WY21W	21
Daytime running lamps.	P13W	30
High-intensity discharge headlamps.	D3S	35
Front fog lamp.	H8	60
Side direction indicator.	LED	LED
Brake and rear lamp.	LED	LED
Central high mounted brake lamp.	LED	LED

Lamp	Specification	Power (Watt)
Rear direction indicator.	LED	LED
Rear fog lamp.	W16W	16
Reversing lamps.	W16W	16
License plate lamp.	LED	LED

Note: *LED lamps are not serviceable. See an authorized dealer if they fail.*

Interior Lamps

Lamp	Specification	Power (Watt)
Glove compartment lamp.	W5W	5
Interior lamp.	W5W	5
Vanity mirror lamp.	T10	3
Luggage compartment lamp.	W5W	5

CLEANING THE EXTERIOR

Note: *If you use a car wash with a waxing cycle, make sure that you remove the wax from the windshield and the wiper blades.*

Note: *Prior to using a car wash facility check the suitability of it for your vehicle.*

Note: *Some car washes use water at high pressure. Due to this, water droplets may enter inside your vehicle and could also damage certain parts of your vehicle.*

Note: *Remove the aerial before using an automatic car wash.*

Note: *Switch the heater blower off to prevent contamination of the fresh air filter.*

We recommend that you wash your vehicle with a sponge and lukewarm water containing a car shampoo.

Cleaning the Headlamps

Note: *Do not scrape the headlamp lenses or use abrasives, alcoholic solvents or chemical solvents to clean them.*

Note: *Do not wipe the headlamps when they are dry.*

Cleaning the Rear Window

Note: *Do not scrape the inside of the rear window or use abrasives or chemical solvents to clean it.*

Use a clean, lint free cloth or a damp chamois leather to clean the inside of the rear window.

Cleaning the Chrome Trim

Note: *Do not use abrasives or chemical solvents. Use soapy water.*

Note: *Do not apply cleaning product to hot surfaces and do not leave cleaning product on chrome surfaces for a period of time exceeding that which is recommended.*

Note: *Industrial-strength (heavy-duty) cleaners, or cleaning chemicals, may cause damage over a period of time.*

Cleaning Stripes or Graphics (If Equipped)

Hand washing your vehicle is preferred however, pressure washing may be used under the following conditions:

- Do not use water pressure higher than 14,000 kPa.
- Do not use water hotter than 82°C.
- Use a spray with a 40° wide spray angle pattern.
- Keep the nozzle at a 305 mm distance and 90° angle to your vehicle's surface.

Note: *Holding the pressure washer nozzle at an angle to the vehicle's surface may damage graphics and cause the edges to peel away from the vehicle's surface.*

Body Paintwork Preservation

We recommend that you wax the paintwork once or twice a year.

Note: *Do not polish your vehicle in strong sunshine.*

Note: *Do not allow polish to touch plastic surfaces. It could be difficult to remove.*

Note: *Do not apply polish to the windshield or rear window. This could cause the wipers to become noisy and they may not clear the window properly.*

CLEANING THE INTERIOR

Note: *Do not allow air fresheners and hand sanitizers to spill on interior surfaces. If a spill occurs, wipe off immediately. Damage may not be covered by your warranty.*

Note: *Do not use household cleaning products or glass cleaners, which can stain and discolor the fabric and affect the flame retardant abilities of the seat materials.*

Note: *We recommend distilled water when cleaning.*

Fabric, Carpets, Cloth Seats, Headliners and Floor Mats

Note: *Avoid soaking any surface.*

Note: *To avoid spots or discoloration, clean the entire surface.*

To clean:

- Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner or brush.
- Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.
- If a ring forms on the fabric after spot cleaning, clean the entire area immediately, but do not soak or the ring will set.

Seatbelts

WARNINGS

Do not use cleaning solvents, bleach or dye on the vehicle's seatbelts, as these actions may weaken the belt webbing.

On vehicles equipped with seat-mounted airbags, do not use chemical solvents or strong detergents. Such products could contaminate the side airbag system and affect performance of the side airbag in a crash.

Note: *Do not use abrasives, or chemical solvents to clean them.*

Note: *Do not allow moisture to penetrate the seatbelt retractor mechanism.*

Cleaning may safely be carried out using mild soap and water. Let them dry naturally, away from artificial heat.

Leather Interior (If Equipped)

Follow the same procedure as cleaning leather seats for cleaning leather instrument panels and leather interior trim surfaces.

Suede Micro Fiber Fabric (If Equipped)

Note: *Do not steam clean.*

Note: *To avoid spots or discoloration, clean the entire surface.*

Do not use the following products:

- Leather care products.
- Household cleaners.
- Alcoholic solutions.
- Spot removers.
- Shoe polish.

To clean:

- Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
- Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.
- If a ring forms on the fabric after spot cleaning, clean the entire area immediately, but do not soak or the ring will set.

Instrument Cluster Screens, LCD Screens and Radio Screens

Note: *Do not use abrasives, alcoholic solvents or chemical solvents to clean the instrument cluster screens, LCD screens or radio screens. These cleaning products can damage the screens.*

Clean the instrument panel and cluster lens with a clean, damp and soft cloth, then use a clean, dry and soft cloth to dry these areas.

Rear Windows

Note: *Do not use any abrasive materials to clean the interior of the rear windows.*

Note: *Do not install stickers or labels to the interior of the rear windows.*

Storage Compartments, Cup Holders and Ashtrays

To clean:

- Take out any removable inserts.
- Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.

CLEANING LEATHER SEATS (If Equipped)

Note: *Follow the same procedure as cleaning leather seats for cleaning leather instrument panels and leather interior trim surfaces.*

Note: *Clean and treat spills as soon as possible. Test any cleaner or stain remover on an inconspicuous area.*

Note: *Avoid soaking any surface.*

Note: *We recommend distilled water when cleaning.*

For cleaning and removing stains such as dye transfer, use a commercially available leather cleaning product for automotive interiors.

Do not use the following products as these may damage the leather:

- Oil and petroleum or silicone-based leather conditioners.
- Household cleaners.
- Alcohol solutions.
- Solvents or cleaners intended specifically for rubber, vinyl and plastics.

To clean:

- Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
- Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.
- Do not rub any stains into the leather.
- For perforated leather, do not use foam cleaning products.

REPAIRING MINOR PAINT DAMAGE

You should repair paintwork damage caused by stones from the road or minor scratches as soon as possible. A choice of products are available from an authorized dealer.

Remove particles such as bird droppings, tree sap, insect deposits, tar spots, road salt and industrial fallout before repairing paint chips.

Always read and follow the manufacturer's instructions before using the products.

CLEANING THE ALLOY WHEELS

Note: *Do not apply a cleaning chemical to warm or hot wheel rims and covers.*

Note: *Industrial-strength (heavy-duty) cleaners, or cleaning chemicals, in combination with brush agitation to remove brake dust and dirt, could wear away the clear coat finish over a period of time.*

Note: *Do not use hydrofluoric acid-based or high caustic-based wheel cleaners, steel wool, fuels or strong household detergent.*

Note: *If you intend parking your vehicle for an extended period after cleaning the wheels with a wheel cleaner, drive your vehicle for a few minutes before doing so. This will reduce the risk of increased corrosion of the brake discs, brake pads and linings.*

Note: *Some automatic car washes may cause damage to the finish on your wheel rims and covers.*

Alloy wheels and wheel covers are coated with a clear coat paint finish. To maintain their condition we recommend that you:

- Clean them weekly with the recommended wheel and tire cleaner.
- Use a sponge to remove heavy deposits of dirt and brake dust accumulation.
- Rinse them thoroughly with a pressurized stream of water when you have completed the cleaning process.

We recommend that you use Ford service wheel cleaner. Make sure that you read and follow the manufacturer's instructions.

Using other non-recommended cleaning products can result in severe and permanent cosmetic damage.

CLEANING THE CONVERTIBLE TOP

Remove lint with a lint roller or a vacuum with a soft bristle brush.

For cloth and vinyl tops, wash with an approved high-quality convertible top cleaner and protectant.

Note: *Do not use stiff bristle brushes, abrasive materials or household cleaning products.*

Note: *High-pressure water may cause water leaks and possible seal damage to the convertible top.*

Note: *Do not fold the convertible top when it is wet.*

Note: *Avoid hot wax on vinyl materials during car washes.*

GENERAL INFORMATION

A decal with tire pressure data is located in the driver's door opening.

Check and set the tire pressure at the ambient temperature in which you are intending to drive your vehicle and when the tires are cold.

Note: *Check your tire pressures regularly to optimize fuel economy.*

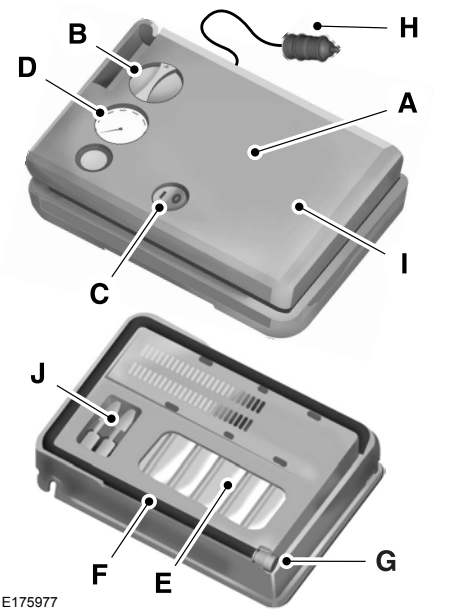
Note: *Use only approved wheel and tire sizes. Using other sizes could damage your vehicle and will make the National Type Approval invalid.*

Note: *If you change the diameter of the tires from that fitted at the factory, the speedometer may not display the correct speed. Take your vehicle to an authorized dealer to have the engine management system reprogrammed.*

TIRE SEALANT AND INFLATOR KIT (If Equipped)

Note: *The temporary mobility kit contains enough sealant compound in the canister for one tire repair only. See an authorized Ford dealer for replacement sealant canisters.*

The kit is located under the load floor in the trunk. The kit consists of an air compressor to re-inflate the tire and a canister of sealing compound that will effectively seal most punctures caused by nails or similar objects. This kit provides a temporary tire repair, allowing you to drive your vehicle up to 200 km at a maximum speed of 80 km/h to reach a tire service location.



E175977

A	Air compressor (inside).
B	Selector switch.
C	On and off button.
D	Air pressure gauge.
E	Sealant bottle and canister.
F	Dual purpose hose: air and repair.
G	Tire valve connector.
H	Accessory power plug.
I	Casing/housing.
J	Bike/raft/sports ball adapters.

General Information

WARNING


Failure to follow these guidelines could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, injury or death.

Note: *Do not use the kit if you have severely damaged a tire. Only seal punctures located within the tire tread with the kit.*

Do not attempt to repair punctures larger than ¼ inch (6 millimeters) or damage to the tire's sidewall. The tire may not completely seal.

Loss of air pressure may adversely affect tire performance. For this reason:

Note: *Do not drive the vehicle above 80 km/h.*

Note: *Do not drive further than 200 km. Drive only to the closest authorized Ford dealer or tire repair shop to have your tire inspected.*

- Drive carefully and avoid abrupt steering maneuvers.
- Periodically monitor tire inflation pressure in the affected tire; if the tire is losing pressure, have the vehicle towed.
- Read the information in the Tips for Use of the Kit section to make sure safe operation of the kit and your vehicle.

Tips for Use of the Kit

To ensure safe operation of the kit:

- Read all instructions and cautions fully.
- Before operating the kit, make sure your vehicle is safely off the road and away from moving traffic. Switch on the hazard lights.
- Always set the parking brake to ensure the vehicle does not move unexpectedly.
- Do not remove any foreign objects, such as nails or screws, from the tire.
- When using the kit, leave the engine running (only if the vehicle is outdoors or in a well-ventilated area) so the compressor does not drain the vehicle's battery.
- Do not allow the compressor to operate continuously for more than 15 minutes. This will help prevent the compressor from overheating.
- Never leave the kit unattended during operation.
- Sealant compound contains latex. Those with latex sensitivities should use appropriate precautions to avoid an allergic reaction.
- Keep the kit away from children.
- Only use the kit when the ambient temperature is between -30°C and 70°C.
- Only use the sealing compound before the use-by date. The use-by date is on a label on the sealant canister, which you can see through the rectangular viewing window on the bottom of the compressor. Check the use-by date regularly and replace the canister after four years of non-use.
- Do not store the kit unsecured inside the passenger compartment of the vehicle as it may cause injury during a sudden stop or crash. Always store the kit in its original location.
- After sealant use, an authorized Ford dealer must replace the tire pressure monitoring system sensor and valve stem on the wheel.
- Operating the kit could cause an electrical disturbance in radio, CD and DVD player operation.

Mustang (CZG) Australia, Vehicles Built From: 02-05-2016, enAUS, First Printing



* When inflation only is required for a tire or other objects, the selector must be in the Air position.

What to do When a Tire Is Punctured

You can repair a tire puncture within the tire's tread area in two stages with the kit.

- In the first stage, inflate the tire with a sealing compound and air. After you inflate the tire, you will need to drive the vehicle a short distance (about 4 miles [6 kilometers]) to distribute the sealant in the tire.
- In the second stage, check the tire pressure and adjust, if necessary, to the vehicle's specified tire inflation pressure.

First Stage: Inflating the Tire with Sealing Compound and Air

WARNINGS

Do not stand directly over the kit while inflating the tire. If you notice any unusual bulges or deformations in the tire's sidewall during inflation, stop and call roadside assistance.

If the tire does not inflate to the recommended tire pressure within 15 minutes, stop and call roadside assistance.

Do not run the engine during kit operation unless the vehicle is outdoors or in a well-ventilated area.

Preparation: Park the vehicle in a safe, level and secure area, away from moving traffic.

Switch the hazard lights on. Apply the parking brake and switch the engine off. Inspect the flat tire for visible damage.

Sealant compound contains latex. Use appropriate precautions to avoid any allergic reactions.

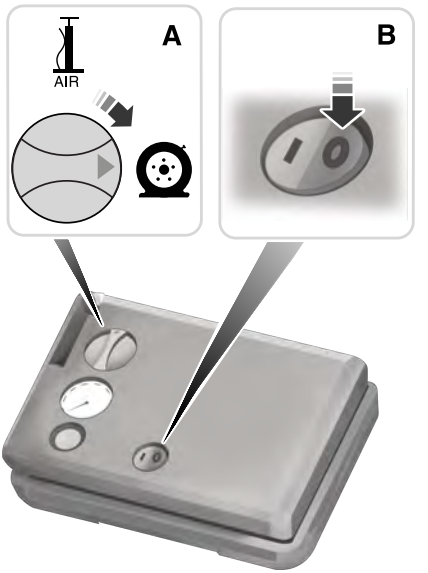
Do not remove any foreign object that has pierced the tire. If a puncture is located in the tire sidewall, stop and call roadside assistance.

1. Remove the valve cap from the tire valve.
2. Unwrap the dual purpose hose (black tube) from the back of the compressor housing.
3. Fasten the hose to the tire valve by turning the connector clockwise. Tighten the connection securely.

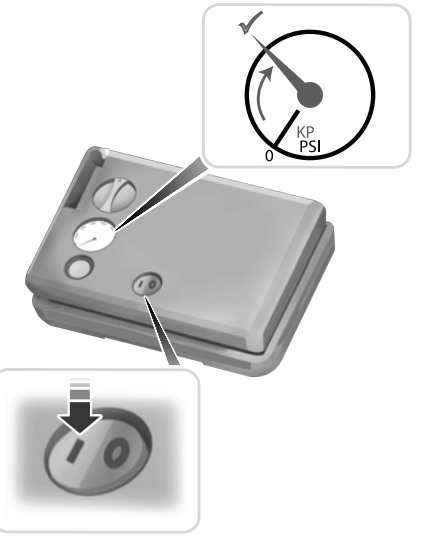


E200523

4. Plug the power cable into the 12-volt power point in the vehicle.
5. Remove the warning sticker found on the casing/housing and place it on the top of the instrument panel or the center of the dash.
6. Start the vehicle and leave the engine running so the compressor does not drain the vehicle’s battery.



E175981



E175982

7. Turn dial (A) clockwise to the sealant position. Switch the kit on by pressing the on/off button (B).
8. Inflate the tire to the pressure listed on the tire label located on the driver's door or the door jamb area. The initial air pressure gauge reading may indicate a value higher than the label pressure while you pump the sealing compound into the tire. This is normal and should be no reason for concern. The pressure gauge reading will indicate the tire inflation pressure after about 30 seconds of operation. You should check the final tire pressure with the compressor turned OFF in order to get an accurate pressure reading.
9. When the tire reaches the recommended tire pressure, switch off the kit, unplug the power cable, and disconnect the hose from the tire valve. Re-install the valve cap on the tire valve and return the kit to the stowage area.
10. Immediately and cautiously, drive the vehicle 4 miles (6 kilometers) to distribute the sealant evenly inside the tire. Do not exceed 50 mph (80 km/h).
11. After 4 miles (6 kilometers), stop and check the tire pressure. See Second Stage: Checking Tire Pressure.

Note: *If you experience any unusual vibration, ride disturbance or noise while driving, reduce your speed until you can safely pull off to the side of the road to call for roadside assistance. Note: Do not proceed to the second stage of this operation.*

Second Stage: Checking Tire Pressure

WARNINGS

If you are proceeding from the First Stage: Re-inflating the Tire with Sealing Compound and Air section and have injected sealant in the tire and the pressure is below 1.4 bar, continue to the next step.

The power plug may get hot after use and should be handled carefully while unplugging.

Check the air pressure of your tires as follows:


E175983

1. Remove the valve cap from the tire valve.
2. Firmly screw the air compressor hose onto the valve stem by turning clockwise.
3. Push and turn the dial clockwise to the air position.
4. If required, switch on the compressor and adjust the tire to the recommended inflation pressure shown on the tire label located on the driver's door or door jamb area. You should check the tire pressure with the compressor turned OFF in order to get an accurate pressure reading.
5. Unplug the hoses, re-install the valve cap on the tire and return the kit to the stowage area.

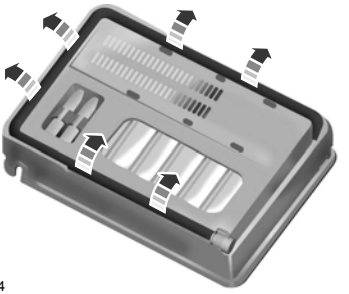
What to Do After the Tire has Been Sealed

After using the kit to seal your tire, you will need to replace the sealant canister. You can obtain sealant canisters and spare parts at an authorized Ford dealer. You can dispose of empty sealant canisters at home. However, you should dispose of canisters still containing liquid sealant through your local authorized Ford dealer or tire dealer, or in accordance with local waste disposal regulation.

Note: *After you use the sealing compound, the maximum vehicle speed is 80 km/h and the maximum driving distance is 200 km. You should inspect the sealed tire immediately.*

You can check the tire pressure any time within the 200 km by performing the steps listed previously in the Second Stage: Checking Tire Pressure procedure.

Removal of the sealant canister from the kit



E175984

1. Unwrap the dual purpose hose (black tube) from the compressor housing.



E175985

2. Unwrap the power cord.



E175986

3. Remove the back cover.



E175987

4. Rotate the sealant canister up 90 degrees and pull away from casing/housing to remove.

Installation of the sealant canister to the kit

1. With the canister held perpendicular to the housing, insert the canister nozzle into the connector and push until seated.
2. Rotate the canister 90 degrees down into the housing/casing.



E175988

3. Snap the back cover back into place.



E175989

4. Wrap the dual purpose hose (black tube) around the channel on the bottom of the housing/casing.



E175990

5. Wrap the power cord around the housing and stow the accessory power plug into its storage area.

Note: *If you experience any difficulties with the removal or installation of the sealant canister, consult an authorized Ford dealer for assistance.*

Make sure you check the sealant compound's use-by date regularly. The use-by date is on a label located on the sealant canister, which you can see through the rectangular viewing window on the bottom of the kit. You should replace the sealant canister after four years of non-use.

TIRE CARE

Note: *If your tires show uneven wear ask an authorized dealer to check for and correct any wheel misalignment, tire imbalance or mechanical problem involved before tire rotation.*

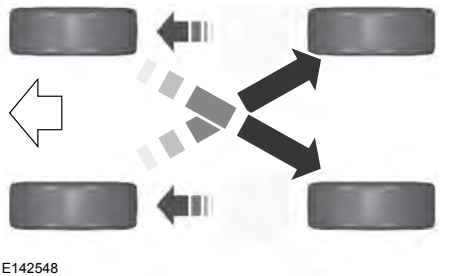
Note: *Your vehicle may be equipped with a dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly. A dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly is defined as a spare wheel and tire assembly that is different in brand, size or appearance from the road tires and wheels. If you have a dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly it is intended for temporary use only and should not be used in a tire rotation.*

Note: *After having your tires rotated, inflation pressure must be checked and adjusted to the vehicle requirements.*

Rotating your tires at the recommended interval (as indicated in the Scheduled Maintenance chapter) will help your tires wear more evenly, providing better tire performance and longer tire life.

Rear-wheel drives vehicles (front tires at left of diagram).

Non-directional tires



E142548

Vehicles equipped with different size tires on the front and rear axle



E209823

Sometimes irregular tire wear can be corrected by rotating the tires.

USING SUMMER TIRES

Summer tires provide superior performance on wet and dry roads. Summer tires do not have the Mud and Snow (M+S or M/S) tire traction rating on the tire side wall. Since summer tires do not have the same traction performance as All-season or Snow tires, we do not recommend using summer tires when temperatures drop to about 7ºC or below (depending on tire wear and environmental conditions) or in snow and ice conditions. Like any tire, summer tire performance is affected by tire wear and environmental conditions. If you must drive in those conditions, we recommend using Mud and Snow (M+S, M/S), All-season or Snow tires.

Always store your summer tires indoors at temperatures above -7ºC. The rubber compounds used in these tires lose flexibility and may develop surface cracks in the tread area at temperatures below -7ºC. If the tires have been subjected to -7ºC or less, warm them in a heated space to at least 5ºC for at least 24 hours before installing them on a vehicle, or moving the vehicle with the tires installed, or checking tire inflation. Do not place tires near heaters or heating devices used to warm the room where the tires are stored. Do not apply heat or blow heated air directly on the tires. Always inspect the tires after storage periods and before use.

TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM

WARNING

The tire pressure monitoring system is not a substitute for manually checking tire pressures. You should periodically check tire pressures using a pressure gauge. Failure to correctly maintain tire pressures could increase the risk of tire failure, loss of control, vehicle rollover and personal injury.

You must check the tire pressures (including the spare tire where applicable) every two weeks when the tires are cold.

You must inflate the tires to the correct pressure.

See **Wheels and Tires** (page 172). The tire pressures are also on the tire inflation pressure label (located on the edge of driver door or the B-Pillar).

As a driver assistance feature, your vehicle has a tire pressure monitoring system. A warning lamp will illuminate when one or more of the tires are significantly under-inflated. If the low tire pressure warning lamp illuminates, you should stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so, check the tires and inflate them to the correct pressure.

Driving on under-inflated tires can:

- Cause them to overheat.
- Lead to tire failure.
- Reduce fuel efficiency.

- Reduce tire life.
- Affect vehicle handling or stopping ability.

The system is not a substitute for correct tire maintenance.

You must maintain the correct tire pressures, even if low tire pressure has not illuminated the warning lamp.

To check the tire pressures through the information display, scroll to:

Message	Action and Description
Driver assist	Press the **OK** button.
Tire Monitor	Press the **OK** button. The tyre pressure graphic displays.

The tire pressure monitoring system has a system malfunction indicator to warn you when the system is not operating correctly. The malfunction indicator and low tire pressure warning lamp have a combined function. When the system detects a malfunction, the warning lamp will flash for approximately one minute and then remain illuminated. This sequence will occur every time you switch the ignition on while the malfunction remains. The system has detected a fault that requires service.

When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressures. A malfunction may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of a replacement tire or wheel that prevents the system from functioning correctly. Always check the tire pressure monitoring system malfunction warning after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle. Make sure the replacement tires or wheels allow the system to continue to function correctly. See **When the Temporary Spare Tire is Installed** in this section.

How Temperature Affects the Tire Pressures

Under normal driving conditions tire pressures may increase by up to 0.3 bar from a cold start situation.

If the vehicle is stationary overnight and the temperature significantly lower than the daytime temperature, tire pressures may decrease by up to 0.2 bar when there is a drop in the ambient temperature of 31ºF (17ºC) or more. The system detects this pressure decrease as being significantly below the correct inflation pressure and the warning lamp illuminates.

Changing Tires With a Tire Pressure Monitoring System


E142549

You should always have tires serviced by an authorized dealer.

Note: *Each road wheel and tire is fitted with a tire pressure sensor located inside the wheel and tire assembly cavity. The pressure sensor attaches to the valve stem. The tire covers the pressure sensor and it is not visible unless the tire is removed. Take care when changing the tire to avoid damaging the sensor.*

Understanding the Tire Pressure Monitoring System

The system measures the pressure in the four road tires and sends the tire pressure readings to your vehicle.

The system detects this lower pressure as being significantly below the correct inflation pressure and the warning lamp illuminates. You must inflate the tires to the correct pressure.

When the Temporary Spare Tire is Installed

If you need to replace a road wheel and tire with the temporary spare wheel, the system will continue to identify a defect. This is to remind you to repair the damaged road wheel and tire and refit the repaired road wheel and tire assembly to your vehicle. To restore the correct operation of the system, you must have the repaired road wheel and tire assembly refitted to your vehicle.

When You Believe the System is Not Operating Correctly

The main function of the system is to warn you when the tire pressures are low. It can also warn you in the event the system is no longer capable of operating correctly. See the following chart for information concerning the system:

When Inflating the Tires

When inflating the tires the system may not respond immediately to the air added to the tires.

System Warning Lamps

Warning lamp	Description	Action
Solid warning lamp	Tire(s) under-inflated	1. Make sure tires are at the correct pressure. See **Wheels and Tires** (page 172). The tire pressures are also on the tire inflation pressure label (located on the edge of driver door or the B-Pillar). 2. After inflating the tires to the correct pressure you must carry out the tire pressure monitoring system reset procedure. See **Tire Pressure Monitoring System Reset Procedure** in this chapter.
	Spare tire in use	Repair the damaged road wheel and tire and refit the repaired road wheel and tire assembly to your vehicle to restore the correct operation of the system.
	Tire pressure monitoring system malfunction	If the tires are correctly inflated and the spare tire is not in use but the light remains on, the system has detected a fault that requires service.
Solid warning lamp initially followed by a flashing warning lamp	Spare tire in use	Repair the damaged road wheel and tire and refit the repaired road wheel and tire assembly to your vehicle to restore the correct operation of the system.
	Tire pressure monitoring system malfunction	If the tires are correctly inflated and the spare tire is not in use but the light remains on, the system has detected a fault that requires service.

If the Warning Lamp is On:

1. Check each tire to verify that none are flat.
2. If one or more tires are flat, repair as necessary.
3. Check the tire pressures and inflate all the tires to the correct pressure.
4. Carry out the tire pressure monitoring system reset procedure.

Tire Pressure Monitoring System Reset Procedure

Overview

To maintain your vehicle load carrying capability, your vehicle requires different tire pressures in the front tires compared to the rear tires.

The system illuminates the warning lamp at different pressures for the front and rear tires.

The tires need to be periodically rotated to provide consistent performance and maximum tire life, the system needs to know when the tires have been rotated to determine which set of tires are on the front and rear axles. With this information, the system can detect and correctly warn of low tire pressures.

Carrying Out the System Reset Procedure

1. Switch the ignition on.
2. Using the information display control, navigate to tire pressure reset. See **Information Displays** (page 63).
3. Press and hold the OK button until confirmation appears.

To reset the tire pressure monitoring system, scroll to:

Message	Description and Action
Settings	Press the **OK** button.
Driver assist	Press the **OK** button.
Tire Monitor	Press and hold the **OK** button until confirmation appears. Alternatively, if your vehicle has a tire pressure monitoring system reset button, press and hold the button until confirmation appears.

CHANGING A ROAD WHEEL

WARNINGS

The use of tire sealant may damage your tire pressure monitoring system and should only be used in roadside emergencies. If you must use a sealant, the Ford Tire Mobility Kit sealant should be used. The tire pressure monitoring system sensor and valve stem on the wheel must be replaced by an authorized dealer after use of the sealant.

If the tire pressure monitor sensor becomes damaged, it will no longer function. See **Tire Pressure Monitoring System** (page 179).

Note: *The tire pressure monitoring system indicator light will illuminate when the spare tire is in use. To restore the full function of the monitoring system, all road wheels equipped with tire pressure monitoring sensors must be mounted on the vehicle.*

If you get a flat tire while driving, do not apply the brake heavily. Instead, gradually decrease your speed. Hold the steering wheel firmly and slowly move to a safe place on the side of the road.

Have a flat tire serviced by an authorized dealer in order to prevent damage to the tire pressure monitoring system sensors. See **Tire Pressure Monitoring System** (page 179). Replace the spare tire with a road tire as soon as possible. During repairing or replacing of the flat tire, have the authorized dealer inspect the tire pressure monitoring system sensor for damage.

Dissimilar Spare Wheel and Tire Assembly Information

WARNING


Failure to follow these guidelines could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, injury or death.

If you have a dissimilar spare wheel and tire, then it is intended for temporary use only. This means that if you need to use it, you should replace it as soon as possible with a road wheel and tire assembly that is the same size and type as the road tires and wheels that were originally provided by Ford. If the dissimilar spare tire or wheel is damaged, it should be replaced rather than repaired.

A dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly is defined as a spare wheel and tire assembly that is different in brand, size or appearance from the road tires and wheels and can be one of three types:

1. **T-type mini-spare:** This spare tire begins with the letter T for tire size and may have Temporary Use Only molded in the sidewall.

2. **Full-size dissimilar spare with label on wheel:** This spare tire has a label on the wheel that states: THIS WHEEL AND TIRE ASSEMBLY FOR TEMPORARY USE ONLY.

When driving with one of the dissimilar spare tires listed above, do not:

- Exceed 80 km/h.
- Load the vehicle beyond maximum vehicle load rating listed on the Safety Compliance Label.
- Use snow chains on the end of the vehicle with the dissimilar spare tire.
- Use more than one dissimilar spare tire at a time.
- Use commercial car washing equipment.
- Try to repair the dissimilar spare tire.

Use of one of the dissimilar spare tires listed above at any one wheel location can lead to impairment of the following:

- Handling, stability and braking performance.
- Comfort and noise.
- Ground clearance and parking at curbs.
- Winter weather driving capability.
- Wet weather driving capability.
- All-wheel driving capability.

3. **Full-size dissimilar spare without label on wheel**

When driving with the full-size dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly, do not:

- Exceed 113 km/h.
- Use more than one dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly at a time.
- Use commercial car washing equipment.
- Use snow chains on the end of the vehicle with the dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly.

The usage of a full-size dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly can lead to impairment of the following:

- Handling, stability and braking performance.
- Comfort and noise.
- Ground clearance and parking at curbs.
- Winter weather driving capability.
- Wet weather driving capability.
- All-wheel driving capability.

When driving with the full-size dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly additional caution should be given to:

- Driving vehicles with a load on the cargo rack.

Drive cautiously when using a full-size dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly and seek service as soon as possible.

Vehicle Jack (If Equipped)

WARNINGS

Ensure screwthread is adequately lubricated before use.*

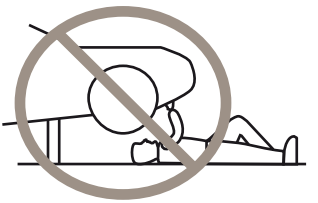
The jack should be used on level firm ground wherever possible.

Switch the ignition off and apply park brake fully before lifting vehicle.

It is recommended that the wheels of the vehicle be chocked, and that no person should remain in a vehicle that is being jacked.

No person should place any portion of their body under a vehicle that is supported by a jack.

WARNING: Do not get under a vehicle that is supported by a jack.



E166722

WARNING

WARNING: The jack supplied with this vehicle is only intended for changing wheels. Do not use the vehicle jack other than when you are changing a wheel in an emergency.**

Note: ***If applicable to the type of jack used (for example, pantograph (scissor) jack).*

Note: ****If equipped. Vehicles with a temporary mobility kit do not have a vehicle jack or lug nut wrench.*

Removing a Road Wheel

WARNINGS

Park your vehicle in such a position that neither the traffic nor you are hindered or endangered.

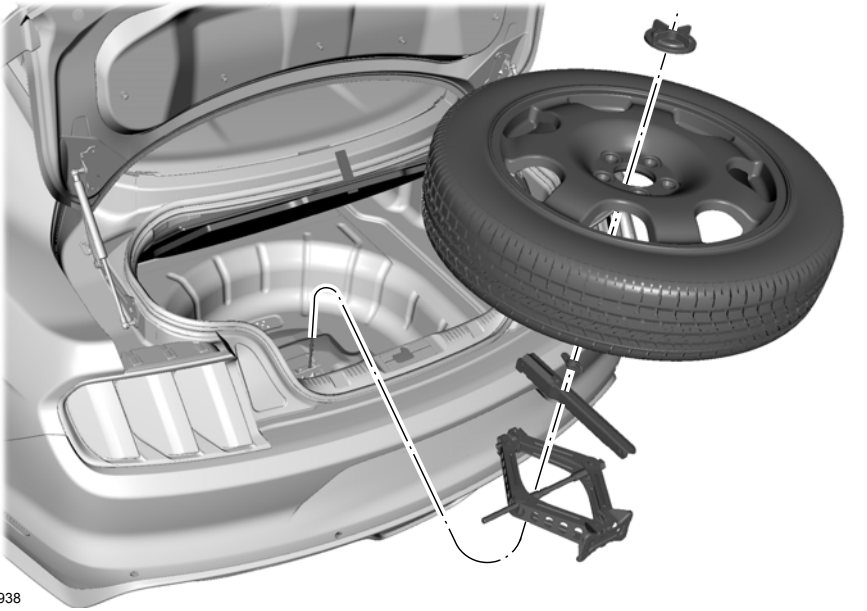
Make sure that the wheels are pointing straight ahead.

If your vehicle has a manual transmission, move the selector lever to first or reverse gear. If it has an automatic transmission, move the selector lever to park (P).

Secure the diagonally opposite wheel with an appropriate block or wheel chock.

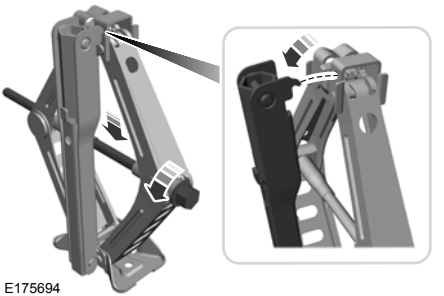
Making sure that the jack is vertical to the jacking point and the base is flat on the ground.

Never place anything between the vehicle jack and your vehicle.



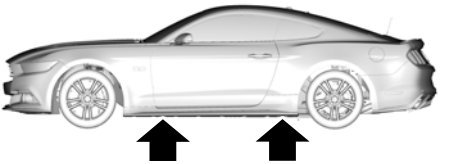
E174938

1. Remove the lug wrech, spare tire and jack.
2. Remove the center ornament from the wheel if required to access the lug nuts.



E175694

3. To remove the wrench from the jack, turn the hex nut on the jack counterclockwise. This will lower the jack and loosen the mechanical lock.
4. Loosen each wheel lug nut one-half turn counterclockwise but do not remove them until the wheel is raised off the ground.



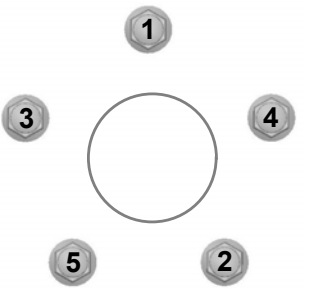
E176084

5. The vehicle jacking points are shown here, and can be identified by the triangle markings on the vehicle. Details are depicted on the warning label on the jack.



E174939

6. Place the jack at the jacking point next to the tire you are changing. Turn the jack handle clockwise until the wheel is completely off the ground.
7. Remove the lug nuts with the lug wrench.
8. Replace the flat tire with the spare tire, making sure the valve stem is facing outward. Reinstall lug nuts until the wheel is snug against the hub. Do not fully tighten the lug nuts until the wheel has been lowered. If you are using the temporary tire, the lug nut washers will not appear to be flush with the rim. This is normal only when using the temporary spare tire.
9. Lower the wheel by turning the jack handle counterclockwise.



E75442

10. Remove the jack and fully tighten the lug nuts in the order shown. See **Technical Specifications** (page 189).
11. To store the folded wrench on the jack, engage the bracket of the jack base on the wrench feature as shown. Swing the wrench upwards and adjust the height of the jack until the pin engages the hole. Tighten the hex nut clockwise by hand until secure.



E176165

12. Put the flat tire, wheel ornament, jack and lug wrench away. Make sure the jack is fastened so it does not rattle when you drive.
13. Unblock the wheel.

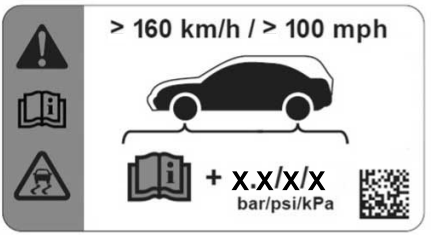
DRIVING AT HIGH SPEED

Tire pressure - Speeds greater than 100 mph (160 km/h)

WARNING

To reduce the risk of potential tire failure that could lead to serious injury or death, increase the front and rear tire placard pressures by the amount shown on the warning label, located on either the driver side B-pillar or door, when driving over 160 km/h. Only travel at speeds over 160 km/h where it is legal and conditions allow. The tire placard pressure can be found on the tire placard located on either the driver side B-pillar or door of your vehicle.

Warning: Failure to follow these instructions can result in a loss of vehicle stability due to tire failure that could lead to serious injury or death. If you are not sure about the proper tire inflation pressures, contact an authorized dealer or service center.



E184089

Your tires may require additional inflation pressure for operation at speeds greater than 160 km/h. If this label is present on your vehicle, you must adjust the tire pressure accordingly.

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

Wheel Lug Nut Torque Specifications

WARNING

When a wheel is installed, always remove any corrosion, dirt or foreign materials present on the mounting surfaces of the wheel or the surface of the wheel hub, brake drum or brake disc that contacts the wheel. Make sure that any fasteners that attach the rotor to the hub are secured so they do not interfere with the mounting surfaces of the wheel. Installing wheels without correct metal-to-metal contact at the wheel mounting surfaces can cause the wheel nuts to loosen and the wheel to come off while your vehicle is in motion, resulting in a loss of control.

Bolt size	lb-ft (Nm)*
M14 X 1.5	204 Nm

*Torque specifications are for nut and bolt threads free of dirt and rust. Use only Ford recommended replacement fasteners.

Retighten the lug nuts to the specified torque within 100 miles (160 kilometers) after any wheel disturbance (such as tire rotation, changing a flat tire, wheel removal).



E145950

A Wheel pilot bore

Inspect the wheel pilot bore and mounting surface prior to installation. Remove any visible corrosion or loose particles.

VEHICLE DIMENSIONS - COUPE

Dimension Description	mm
Maximum length.	4,784 mm
Overall width including exterior mirrors.	2,080 mm
Overall height - EC curb weight.	1,381 mm
Wheelbase.	2,720 mm
Front track.	1,582 mm
Rear track.	1,655 mm

VEHICLE DIMENSIONS - CONVERTIBLE

Dimension Description	mm
Maximum length.	4,784 mm
Overall width including exterior mirrors.	2,080 mm
Overall height - EC curb weight.	1,394 mm
Wheelbase.	2,720 mm
Front track.	1,582 mm
Rear track.	1,655 mm

VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION PLATE

Note: *The label with your vehicle built date is located on the bottom of the lock side of the driver's door aperture.*

Note: *Your vehicle identification plate design may vary to that shown.*

Note: *The information shown on the vehicle identification plate is dependent upon market requirements.*



E219357

A Built Date

Built Date

Built Date means the calendar month and the year in which the body shell and power train sub-assemblies are conjoined and the vehicle is driven or moved from the production line.

VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION NUMBER

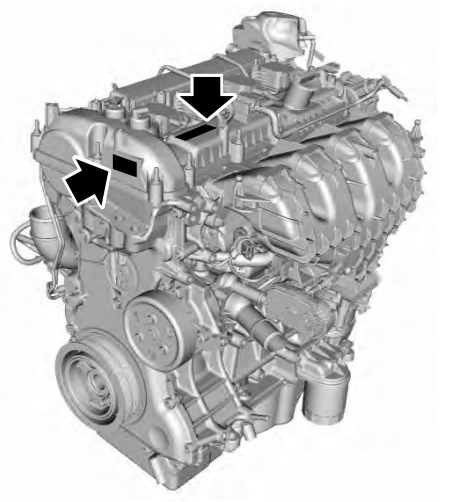
You can find the vehicle identification number at the following locations.



E224201

The Vehicle Identification Number is stamped into the floor panel on the right-hand side, in front of the drivers seat. It is also viewable at the bottom of the windscreen on the drivers side.

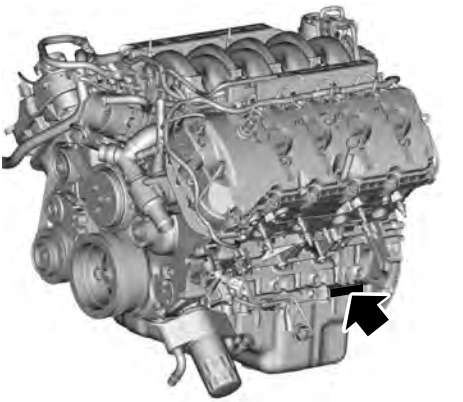
2.3L EcoBoost Engine



E184282

The engine number can also be found in several locations on the engine.

5.0L Engine



E208045

The engine number will be located on the left-hand side of the engine, at the bottom pan rail edge toward the rear of the engine.

GENERAL INFORMATION

Radio Frequencies and Reception Factors

Radio reception factors	
Distance and Strength	The further you travel away from an FM station, the weaker the signal and the weaker the reception.
Terrain	Hills, mountains, tall buildings, bridges, tunnels, freeway overpasses, parking garages, dense tree foliage and thunderstorms can interfere with the reception.
Station overload	When you pass near a radio transmission tower, a stronger signal can override a weaker signal and can cause interference in the audio system.

CD and CD Player Information

Note: *CD units play commercially pressed 4.75-inch (12 centimeter) audio compact discs only. Due to technical incompatibility, certain recordable and re-recordable compact discs may not function correctly when used in Ford CD players.*

Note: *Do not insert CDs with homemade paper (adhesive) labels into the CD player as the label may peel and cause the CD to become jammed. You should use a permanent felt tip marker rather than adhesive labels on your homemade CDs. Ballpoint pens may damage CDs. Please contact an authorized dealer for further information.*

Note: *Do not use any irregularly shaped discs or discs with a scratch protection film attached.*

Always handle discs by their edges only. Clean the disc with an approved CD cleaner only. Wipe it from the center of the disc toward the edge. Do not clean in a circular motion.

Do not expose discs to direct sunlight or heat sources for extended periods.

MP3 and WMA Track and Folder Structure

Audio systems capable of recognizing and playing MP3 and WMA individual tracks and folder structures work as follows:

- There are two different modes for MP3 and WMA disc playback: MP3 and WMA track mode (system default) and MP3 and WMA folder mode.
- MP3 and WMA track mode ignores any folder structure on the MP3 and WMA disc. The player numbers each MP3 and WMA track on the disc (noted by the MP3 or WMA file extension) from T001 to a maximum of T255. The maximum number of playable MP3 and WMA files may be less depending on the structure of the CD and exact model of radio present.

- MP3 and WMA folder mode represents a folder structure consisting of one level of folders. The CD player numbers all MP3 and WMA tracks on the disc (noted by the MP3 or WMA file extension) and all folders containing MP3 and WMA files, from F001 (folder) T001 (track) to F253 T255.
- Creating discs with only one level of folders helps with navigation through the disc files.

If you are burning your own MP3 and WMA discs, it is important to understand how the system reads the structures you create. While various files may be present, (files with extensions other than MP3 and WMA), only files with the MP3 and WMA extension are played; other files are ignored by the system. This enables you to use the same MP3 and WMA disc for a variety of tasks on your work computer, home computer and your in-vehicle system.

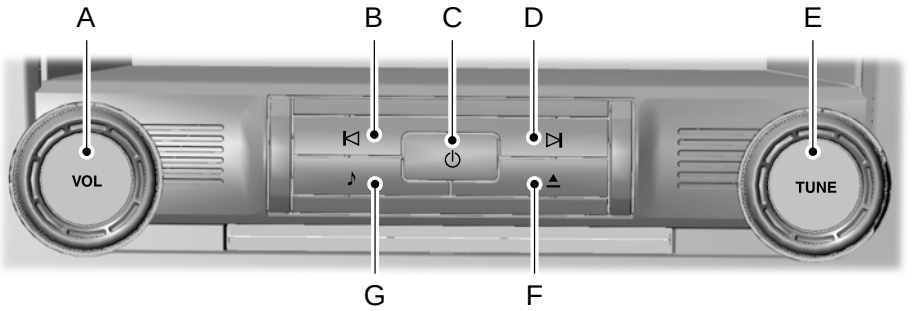
In track mode, the system displays and plays the structure as if it were only one level deep (all MP3 and WMA files play, regardless of being in a specific folder). In folder mode, the system only plays the MP3 and WMA files in the current folder.

AUDIO UNIT - VEHICLES WITH: PREMIUM AM/FM/CD

WARNING

Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Note: *The touchscreen system controls most of the audio features. See your SYNC information.*



E174101

A **VOL:** Turn the dial to adjust the system volume.

B **Seek and Reverse:** In radio mode, select a frequency band and press this button. The system stops at the first station down the band. Press and hold the button to move quickly to the previous strong radio station or memory preset. In CD mode, press this button to select the previous track. Press and hold the button to move quickly backward through the current track.

C **Power:** Press this button to turn the system off and on.

D **Seek and Fast Forward:** In radio mode, select a frequency band and press this button. The system stops at the first station up the band. Press and hold the button to move quickly to the next strong radio station or memory preset. In CD mode, press this button to select the next track. Press and hold the button to move quickly forward through the current track.

E **TUNE:** Once you select a frequency band, turn the dial to find the desired station.

F **Eject:** Press this button to eject a CD.

G **Sound:** Press this button to access settings for Treble, Midrange, Bass, Fade and Balance.

DIGITAL RADIO

General Information

The system allows you to listen to DAB (Digital Audio Broadcast) radio stations.

Note: *Coverage differs from region to region and influences the quality of reception. It is broadcast nationwide, regionally and locally. Coverage may vary on weather conditions and terrain.*

The following formats are supported:

- DAB.
- DAB+.
- DMB-Audio (Digital Multimedia Broadcasting).

Ensembles

Ensembles contain a group of radio stations. Each ensemble can consist of several different radio stations.

The radio station name displays below the ensemble name.

Note: *When you tune from one ensemble to another, it can take a while until the system synchronizes to the next ensemble. The system mutes during synchronization.*

Selecting Radio Band

DAB 1, DAB 2 and DAB 3 operate in the same way. You can store up to 10 different presets on each band.

1. Press the **RADIO** button.
2. Press the left arrow button to display the available wavebands.
3. Select **DAB 1**, **DAB 2** or **DAB 3**.

Note: *When you reach the first or last radio station within an ensemble, further tuning will skip to the next ensemble. There may be a delay during this change and the audio will briefly mute.*

Radio Station Tuning Controls

Seek Tuning (Alternative 1)

1. Press a seek button. The system stops at the first radio station it finds in the direction chosen.

Radio Station List (Alternative 2)

This feature displays all the available radio stations in a list.

1. Press the browse button.
2. Press the left or right arrow buttons to change ensembles. Press the up or down arrow buttons to navigate to your required radio station.
3. Press **OK** to confirm your selection.

Note: *The display only shows radio stations in the current ensemble.*

Manual Tuning (Alternative 3)

1. Press the tune buttons. Press and hold to move through the waveband quickly.

Radio Station Preset Buttons

This feature allows you to store up to 6 favorite radio stations from any ensemble in each preset bank.

1. Select a radio station.
2. Press and hold one of the preset buttons. When the system stores the station, a message appears. The system mutes momentarily as confirmation.

Once stored press a preset button at any time to select a favorite radio station.

Note: *Radio stations stored on the preset buttons may not always be available if you have left the coverage area. The system mutes when this happens. This may result in unexpected changes to radio station presets.*

Radio Text

You can display extra information. For example; artist name. To switch this option on, select the radio text on feature in the options menu.

Note: *Extra information may not always be available.*

Service Linking

If you leave the coverage area of a DAB radio station the system will automatically switch to the corresponding FM radio station.

You can switch this feature on and off using the information display.

Note: *If a DAB radio station has no corresponding FM radio station, the audio will mute when attempting to switch.*

Note: *The system displays the FM symbol when DAB and FM radio stations link.*

Note: *The sound quality changes when your system switches from DAB to the corresponding FM station.*

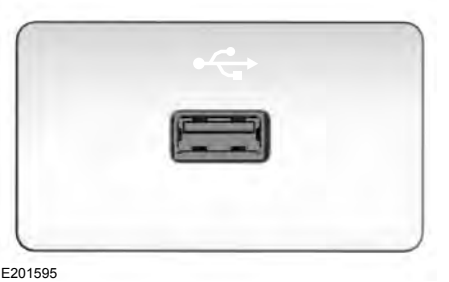
USB PORT (If Equipped)


E176344

The USB port allows you to plug in media playing devices, memory sticks and charge devices (if supported). See your SYNC information.

MEDIA HUB (If Equipped)

The media hub is located in the center console and has the following features:


E201595

See your SYNC information.

GENERAL INFORMATION

WARNING

Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Getting to Know Your System

The SYNC 3 system allows you to interact with a variety of features using the touchscreen and voice commands. By integrating with your Bluetooth-enabled phone, the touchscreen provides easy interaction with audio, multimedia, climate control, navigation, and your phone's SYNC 3 compatible apps.

Using the Touchscreen

To operate the touchscreen, you can simply touch the item or option that you want to select. The button changes color when you select it.

The SYNC 3 layout allows you to quickly select the feature you wish to use.



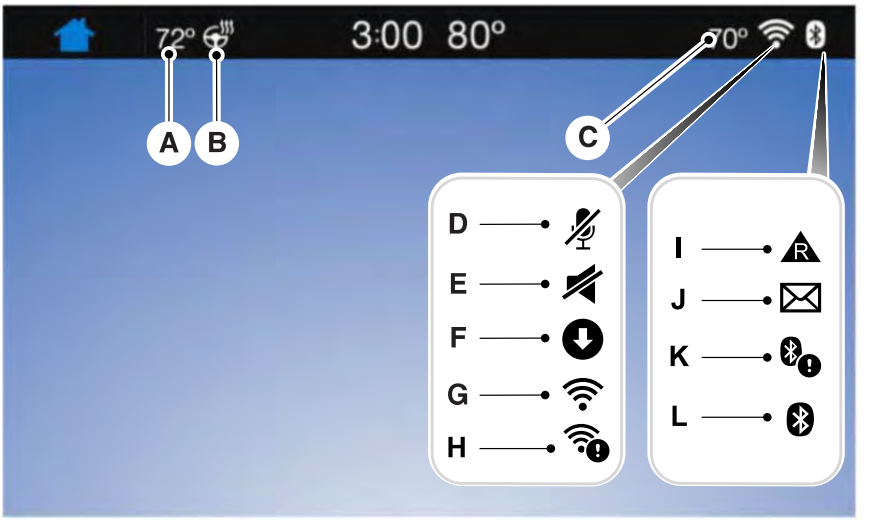
Item	Menu Item	Action and Description
A	Status Bar	This bar displays icons and messages pertaining to current system activities including climate settings, voice commands and phone functions such as text messages.
B	Home	This button is available on the main screens. Pressing it takes you to the home screen view.
C	Clock	This shows the current time. You can set the clock manually or have it controlled by the vehicle's GPS location. See **Settings** (page 235).
D	Outside Temperature	This displays the current outside temperature.
E	Feature Bar	You can touch any of the buttons on this bar to select a feature.

The touchscreen allows you quick access to all of your comfort, navigation, communication and entertainment options. Using the status and feature bar you can quickly select the feature you want to use.

Note: *Your system is equipped with a feature that allows you to access and control audio features for 10 minutes after you switch the ignition off (and no doors open).*

The Status Bar

Additional icons also display in the status bar depending on market, vehicle options and current operation. If a feature is not active, the icon does not display. Certain icons may move to the left or right depending on what options are active.



E222826

Callout	Item	Description
A	Driver Temperature	This shows the temperature the driver selects through the climate control system.
B	Heated steering wheel: (If equipped)	This icon displays if the heated steering wheel option is selected on the touchscreen. It is only shown when there is not a physical button for the heated steering wheel.
C	Passenger Temperature	The passenger side temperature displays when the passenger adjusts their climate settings. If you set the climate to Auto, the climate control system links the temperature settings for both the driver and passenger side. In Auto, the passenger-side temperature does not display.
D	Microphone Mute	This icon displays when your phone's microphone is muted. A caller cannot hear you.
E	Mute	When you mute the audio system this icon appears.

Callout	Item	Description
F	Downloading	This icon appears when SYNC 3 receives a software update. Pressing the icon shows more details about the new software.
G	Wi-Fi	This icon appears if a Wi-Fi network is connected.
H	Wi-Fi in Range	An available Wi-Fi network is within range.
I	Roaming	When your cell phone roams, this icon appears.
J	Text Message	This icon displays when you receive a text message on your phone.
K	Bluetooth Alert	The Bluetooth alert icon displays when there is an active Bluetooth alert .
L	Bluetooth	This icon displays to show an active Bluetooth connection.

Messages may also appear in the status bar to provide you with notifications. You can select the message to view the associated feature.

Feature Bar

Feature Bar Item	Functions
Audio	Allows you to control the media playing in your vehicle. You can control all audio features including AM, FM and satellite radio, CDs, and media streaming over a Bluetooth device or through a USB connection.
Climate	Allows you to adjust the temperature, fan speed and airflow within the vehicle.
Phone	Allows you to make calls, receive calls, and access the phonebook of your connected device.
Navigation	Allows you to see your vehicle's location on a virtual road map, get driving directions to your destination and find points of interest along your route.

Feature Bar Item	Functions
(If equipped)	
Apps	Connect and control SYNC 3 compatible apps running on your iphone or android device. Also, access built-in additional features such as SiriusXM Traffic and Travel Link (if equipped).
Settings	You can customize your system with various settings for the touchscreen display, feature preferences, and how you want to interact with your vehicle.

Cleaning the Touchscreen

You can remove fingerprints with a dry, clean, soft cloth.

If dirt or fingerprints are still on the screen, apply a small amount of alcohol to the cloth and try to clean it again.

Note: *Do not use detergent or any type of solvent to clean the touchscreen.*

Note: *Do not pour or spray alcohol onto the touchscreen.*

Using Voice Recognition

Using voice commands allows you to keep your hands on the wheel and focus on what is in front of you. The system provides feedback through audible tones, prompts, questions and spoken confirmations depending on the situation and the chosen level of interaction (voice settings).

The system also asks short questions (confirmation prompts) when it is not sure of your request or when there are multiple possible responses to your request.

When using voice commands, words and icons may appear in the status bar indicating the status of the voice command session. See **Using Voice Recognition** (page 209).

Using the Steering Wheel Controls

Depending on your vehicle and option package, you can use different controls on your steering wheel to interact with the touchscreen system in different ways.

VOL: Control the volume of audio output.

Mute: Mute the audio output.

Voice: Press to start a voice session. Press again to stop the voice prompt and immediately begin speaking. Press and hold to end a voice session.

SEEK NEXT:

- While in radio mode, press to seek between memory presets.
- While in USB, Bluetooth Audio or CD mode, press to seek between songs or press and hold to fast seek.

SEEK PREVIOUS:

- While in radio mode, press to seek between memory presets.
- While in USB, Bluetooth Audio or CD mode, press to seek between songs or press and hold to fast seek.

PHONE ACCEPT: Press to answer a call or switch between calls.

PHONE REJECT: Press to end a call or reject an incoming call.

Note: *On some models,* ***SEEK NEXT*** *may be combined with* ***PHONE REJECT*** *and* ***SEEK PREVIOUS*** *may be combined with* ***PHONE ACCEPT.***

M: Touch the control repeatedly to switch between media sources (modes).

See **Steering Wheel** (page 45).

Using Your Bezel Controls

Depending on your vehicle and option package, you may also have these controls on your instrument panel:

- **Power:** Switch the audio system on and off.
- **VOL:** Control the volume of playing audio.
- **Seek** and **Tune:** Use as you normally would in audio modes.
- **Eject:** Eject a CD from the audio system.
- **SOURCE** or **MEDIA:** Press repeatedly to advance through available media modes.
- **SOUND:** Press to access the Sound menu where you can adjust sound and other audio settings.
- **1-6:** Press and hold to store or press to select an AM, FM or SIRIUS memory preset. See **Audio System** (page 194).
- **DISP:** Switch the display on or off. You can also touch the screen to switch the display back on.
- **Temperature, fan and climate control buttons:** Control the temperature, fan speed or settings of the climate control system. See **Climate Control** (page 80).

Safety Information

WARNING

Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

- Do not attempt to service or repair the system. Have an authorized dealer check your vehicle.
- Do not operate playing devices if the power cords or cables are broken, split or damaged. Place cords and cables out of the way, so they do not interfere with the operation of pedals, seats, compartments or safe driving abilities.
- Do not leave playing devices in your vehicle during extreme conditions as it could cause them damage. See your device's user guide for further information.
- For your safety, some SYNC 3 functions are speed-dependent. Their use is limited to when your vehicle is traveling at speeds under 5 km/h. Make sure that you review your device's manual before using it with SYNC 3.

Speed-restricted Features

Some features of this system may be too difficult to use while your vehicle is moving so they are restricted from use unless your vehicle is stationary.

- Screens crowded with information, such as Point of Interest reviews and ratings, SiriusXM Traffic and Travel Link sports scores, movie times or ski conditions.
- Any action that requires you to use a keyboard is restricted, such as entering a navigation destination or editing information.
- All lists are limited so the user can view fewer entries (such as phone contacts or recent phone call entries).

See the following chart for more specific examples.

Restricted features	
Cellular Phone	Pairing a Bluetooth phone.
	Browsing of list entries is limited for phone contacts and recent phone calls.
System Functionality	Editing the keypad code.
	Enabling Valet Mode.
	Editing settings while the rear view camera or active park assist are active.
Wi-Fi and Wireless	Editing wireless settings.
	Editing the list of wireless networks.
	Connecting to a new Wi-Fi network that requires a secure code to be entered via the keyboard.
Text Messages	Viewing received text messages.
Navigation	Using the keyboard to enter a destination.
	Demo navigation route.
	Adding or editing Navigation Favorites entries or Avoid Areas.

Creating a SYNC Owner Account

Why do I need a SYNC owner account?

- Essential for keeping up with the latest software and connected features.
- Access to customer support for any questions you may have.
- Maintain account permissions.

Updating Your System

You can choose to download the update onto a USB drive or use Wi-Fi to deliver automatic updates.

USB Updates

To use the USB update you need to log into your owner account and visit the SYNC software update page.

The website notifies you if an update is available. You can then select to download the update.

You will need an empty USB drive. Please check the website for minimum requirements. Once you have inserted the USB drive into your computer, choose to start the download. Follow the instructions provided to download the files to the USB drive.

The installation of most files occurs in the background, and does not interrupt your use of the system. Navigation updates cannot be installed in the background, because the files are too large.

To install the update in your vehicle, remove anything that is plugged in the USB ports on the media hub and plug in the USB drive containing the update. When the USB drive is plugged in, the installation should begin immediately. After a successful installation, the update is available the next time the vehicle is started.

Please reference website for any further actions.

Updating Over Wi-Fi

To update your System over Wi-Fi your vehicle must be within the range of a Wi-Fi access point. Data rates may apply.

To connect your system to Wi-Fi, select:

Menu Item	
Settings	
Wi-Fi	
Available Wi-Fi Networks	You can then select your Wi-Fi network. You may have to enter the security code if the network is secured. The system confirms when it has connected to the network.

You must also give the system permission to update automatically. Upon vehicle delivery, the System asks you if you would like to use the automatic update feature. If you agree to automatic updates, you can press OK to confirm. If this selection does not appear upon vehicle delivery you can access it through the General Settings. See **Settings** (page 235). You can also perform a master reset. See **SYNC™ 3 Troubleshooting** (page 248).

If you would like to switch this feature on later, select:

Menu Item	
Settings	
General	
Automatic System Updates	From this menu, you can enable automatic updates. If you have not done so already, the system prompts you to set up a Wi-Fi connection when you enable this feature.

When Wi-Fi and automatic updates are enabled, your system checks for software updates periodically. If a new version is available, it downloads at that time. Software downloads can take place for up to 30 minutes after you have switched your vehicle off. The updates do not interrupt the normal use of your SYNC 3 system. If a download does not complete for any reason, the download continues where it left off at the next Wi-Fi connected opportunity. Upon activation of an update, a banner displays on the touchscreen indicating the system update. Select the icon to see more detail. This icon displays for two ignition cycles.

To switch this feature off:

Menu Item	
Settings	
General	
Automatic System Updates	In this menu selection, you can change the selection for automatic updates to OFF.

Support

For further support, contact an authorized dealer. For more information, visit the regional Ford website.

Privacy Information

When you connect a cellular phone to SYNC 3, the system creates a profile within your vehicle that links to that cellular phone. This profile helps in offering you more cellular features and operating more efficiently. Among other things, this profile may contain data about your cellular phone book, text messages (read and unread), and call history, including history of calls when your cell phone was not connected to the system. In addition, if you connect a media device, the system creates and retains an index of supported media content. The system also records a short diagnostic log of approximately 10 minutes of all recent system activity. The log profile and other system data may be used to improve the system and help diagnose any problems that may occur.

The cellular profile, media device index, and diagnostic log remain in your vehicle unless you delete them and are generally accessible only in your vehicle when the cellular phone or media player is connected.

If you no longer plan to use the system or your vehicle, we recommend you perform a Master Reset to erase all stored information. You can find more information about the Master Reset in General Settings. See **Settings** (page 235). System data cannot be accessed without special equipment and access to your vehicle's SYNC 3 module. Ford Motor Company and Ford of Canada do not access the system data for any purpose other than as described absent consent, a court order, or where required by law enforcement, other government authorities, or other third parties acting with lawful authority. Other parties may seek to access the information independently of Ford Motor Company and Ford of Canada.

HOME SCREEN



Item	Tile	Home screen display
A	Audio	Shows the active media source. If your vehicle does not have navigation, this space contains the compass.
B	Phone	The name of the connected phone appears on the screen. The status of the phone features also appear. This includes signal strength, battery charge, text messaging and roaming.
C	Navigation *	This map displays your current location or current route in real time. When you have navigation active, you also see the next turn and the length of time and distance to your destination.

Item	Tile	Home screen display
		If your vehicle does not have navigation, this space contains the audio information.

* If equipped.

You can touch any of the feature displays to access that feature.

Anytime you select the home button, the system returns you to this screen.

USING VOICE RECOGNITION

The SYNC 3 system allows you to use voice commands, to control features like audio and climate controls. By using voice commands, you can keep your hands on the wheel and your eyes on the road.

You can access each feature controlled by SYNC 3 through a variety of commands.



To activate the SYNC 3 voice commands push the voice button on the steering wheel and wait for the prompt.

___ is a dynamic listing, meaning that it can be the name of anything, such as artist, the name of contact or number. The context and the description of the command tell you what to say for this dynamic option.

There are some commands that work for every feature, these commands are:

Voice Command	Action and Description
Main Menu	Brings you to the main menu.
Go back	Returns you to the previous screen.
Cancel	Ends the voice session.
List of Commands	Gives you a list of possible voice commands.
___ List of Commands	You can name any feature and the system gives a list of commands available for the feature. For example, you could say:
	Phone List of Commands
	Navigation List of Commands
Next Page	You can use this command to view the next page of options on any screen where multiple pages of choices are given.
Previous Page	You can use this command to view the previous page of options on any screen where multiple pages of choices are given.
Help	Gives you available commands you can use on the current screen.

Included here are some of the most popular commands for each SYNC 3 feature.

Audio Voice Commands

___ is a dynamic listing, meaning that for audio voice commands it can be a radio frequency number, or the name of a artist, album, song or a genre.

To control the media features, press the voice button and when prompted, say:

Voice command	Description
AM ___ FM ___	Allows you to tune to a specific FM or AM frequency such as "88.7 FM" or "1580 AM".
Bluetooth Audio	Allows you to listen to music on your Bluetooth-connected device.
USB	Allows you to listen to music on your USB connected device.
Play Genre ___ Play Playlist ___ Play Artist ___ Play Album ___ Play Podcast ___ Play Song ___ Play Audiobook ___	For USB audio only, you can say the name of an artist, album, song or a genre to listen to that selection. Your system must finish indexing before this option is available. For example, you could say "Play artist, The Beatles" or "Play song, Penny Lane".
Browse ___	For USB audio only, you can say the name of an artist, album, or a genre to browse by that selection. Your system must finish indexing before this option is available. For example you can say "Browse The Beatles" or "Browse folk".

Climate Voice Commands (If Equipped)

You can control the temperature of the vehicle using voice commands.

___ is a dynamic listing, meaning that for climate voice commands it can be the desired degrees for the temperature setting.

To adjust the temperature, say:

Voice command	Description
Climate Set Temperature ___	Adjust the temperature between 15ºC-30ºC.
Climate Help	

Phone Voice Commands

Pairing a Phone

You can use voice commands to connect your Bluetooth-enabled phone to the system.

To pair your phone, press the voice button and when prompted, say:

Voice command	Description
Pair Phone	Follow the on-screen instructions to complete the pairing process. See **Settings** (page 235).

Making Calls

___ is a dynamic listing, meaning that for phone voice commands it can be the name of the contact you wish to call or the digits you want to dial.

Press the voice button and say a command similar to the following:

Voice command	Description
Call ___	Allows you to call a specific contact from your phonebook such as "Call Jenny".
Call ___ at ___	Allows you to call a specific contact from your phonebook at a specific location such as "Call Jenny at Home".
Dial ___	Allows you to dial a specific number such as “Dial 867-5309”.

Please make sure that you are saying the contact name exactly as it appears in your contact list.

Once you have provided the digits of the phone number, you can say the following commands:

Voice Command	Description
<0-9>	If the full number was not entered with the first command, you can continue saying the number.
Dial	Tells SYNC 3 to make the phone call.
Delete	Tells SYNC 3 to erase the last block of digits stated.
Clear	Tells SYNC 3 to erase the entire number.

Text Message Voice Commands

To access text message options, press the voice button and say:

Voice command	Description
Listen to Message	
Listen to text message ___	You can say the number of the message you would like to hear.
Reply to Message	

Navigation Voice Commands

Setting a Destination

You can use any of the following commands to set a destination or find a point of interest.

___ is a dynamic listing, meaning that for navigation voice commands it can be a POI category or an address.

You can find an address, a point of interest (POI), or search for points of interest by category:

Voice command	Description
Find an Address	Allows you to enter the address search functionality.
Find a ___	State the name of the POI category you would like to search for such as "Find restaurants".
Find POI	Allows you to enter the POI search functionality.
Find Intersection	Allows you to enter the intersection search functionality.

Voice command	Description
Destination Nearest ___	State the name of the POI category you would like to search for nearby such as "Destination nearest restaurants".
Destination Previous Destination	Allows you to see a list of your previous destinations.
Destination Home	Allows you to route to your home address.

In addition, you can say these commands when a route is active:

Voice command	Description
Cancel Route	Cancels the current route.
Detour	Allows you to select an alternate route.
Repeat Instruction	Repeats the last guidance prompt.
Show Route	Repeats the last guidance prompt.
Where Am I	Provides current location.
Zoom in	Allows you to zoom in on the map.
Zoom out	Allows you to zoom out from the map.

Mobile App Voice Commands (If Equipped)

The following voice commands are always available:

Voice command	Description
Mobile Apps	SYNC 3 will prompt you to say the name of an app to start it on SYNC 3.
List Mobile Apps	SYNC 3 will list all of the currently available Mobile Apps.
Find New Apps	SYNC 3 will search and connect to compatible app(s) running on your mobile device.

There are also voice commands that you can use when app(s) are connected to SYNC 3:

Voice command	Description
Say the name of an app	At any time, you can say the name of a mobile app to start the mobile app on SYNC 3.
Say the name of an app, followed by help	SYNC 3 will list the available voice commands for the specified app if the app is running on SYNC 3.

Voice Settings Commands

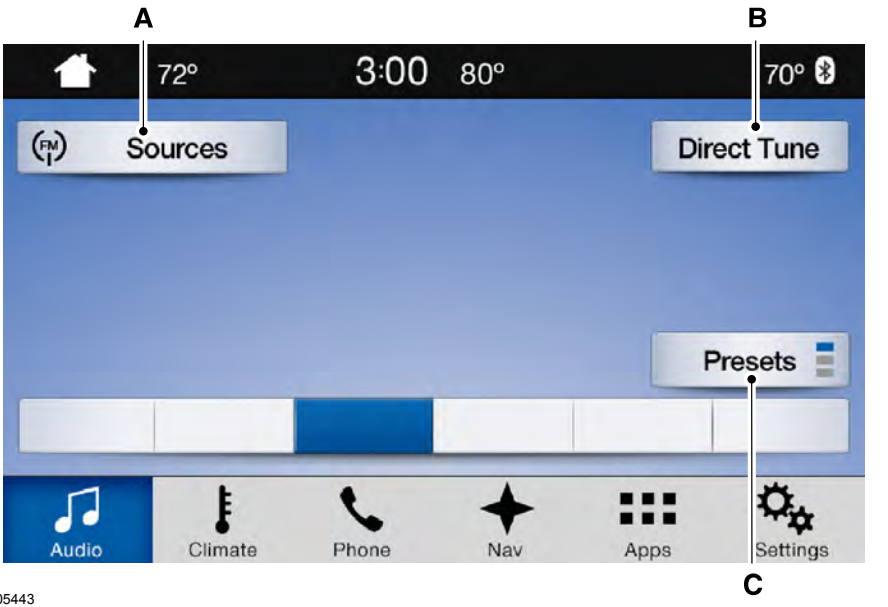
You can say the following commands to access the voice settings:

Voice command	Description
Voice Settings	Allows you to enter the voice settings functionality.
Interaction Mode Standard	Sets standard prompting with longer prompts.
Interaction Mode Advanced	Sets advanced prompting with shorter prompts.
Phone Confirmation On	Allows the system to confirm before making a phone call.
Phone Confirmation Off	The system does not confirm before placing a call.
Voice Command Lists On	The system displays a short list of available commands.
Voice Command Lists Off	The system does not display the list of commands.

Note: *Depending on the current climate control settings, the fan speed may automatically go down while issuing voice commands or while making and receiving phone calls via SYNC to reduce the amount of background noise in the vehicle. The fan speed will automatically return to normal operation once the voice session ends. Fan speed can also be adjusted normally during a voice session, simply press fan buttons (or turn fan knob) to increase or decrease fan speed to desired setting.*

To disable this automatic fan speed reduction feature during voice sessions, press and hold the climate control AC and Recirculated air buttons simultaneously, release and then increase fan speed within 2 seconds. To re-enable this feature, repeat the above sequence.

ENTERTAINMENT



E205443

Message	Message and description
A	Sources
B	Direct Tune
C	Presets

You can access these options using the touchscreen or voice commands.

Sources

Press this button to select the source of media you want to listen to.

Menu item
AM
FM
CD

Menu item	
USB	The name of the USB that is plugged in displays here.
Bluetooth Stereo	
Apps	If you have SYNC 3 compatible apps on your connected smart phone, they display here as individual source selections.

AM/FM Radio

Tuning a Station

You can use the tune or seek controls on the radio bezel to select a station.

To tune a station using the touchscreen, select:

Menu item
Direct Tune

A pop up appears, allowing you to type in the frequency of a station. You can only enter a valid station for the source you are currently listening to.

You can press the backspace button to delete the previously entered number.

Once you have entered the station's call numbers, you can select:

Menu item	Action and description
Enter	Press to begin playing the station you have entered.
Cancel	Press to exit without changing the station.

Presets

To set a new preset, tune to the station and then press and hold one of the memory preset buttons. The audio mutes briefly while the system saves the station and then returns.

There are two preset banks available for AM and three banks for FM. To access additional presets, tap the preset button. The indicator on the preset button shows which bank of presets you are currently viewing.

CD

Once you select this option, the system returns you to the main audio screen.

The current audio information appears on the screen.

The following buttons are also available:

Button	Function
Browse	You can use the browse button to select a track.
Repeat	Select this button and a small number one displays to indicate the track is set to repeat. For MP3 CDs, this button allows you to toggle through repeat off, repeat one track (a small number one displays), and repeat current folder (a small folder displays).
Shuffle	Select the shuffle symbol to have the audio on the disk play in random order.

You can use the forward, reverse, pause or play buttons to control the audio playback.

Bluetooth Stereo or USB

Bluetooth Stereo and USB allow you to access media that you store on your Bluetooth device or USB device such as music, audio books or podcasts.

The following buttons are available for Bluetooth and USB:

Button	Function
Repeat	Pressing the repeat button toggles the repeat setting through three modes: repeat off (button not highlighted), repeat all (button highlighted) and repeat track (button highlighted with a small number one).
Shuffle	Play the tracks in random order.

You can use the forward, reverse, pause or play buttons to control the audio playback.

To get more information about the currently playing track, press the cover art or Info button.

For some devices, SYNC 3 is able to provide 30-second skip buttons when you listen to audio books or podcasts. These buttons allow you to skip forward or backward within a track.

While playing audio from a USB device you can look for certain music by selecting the following:

Button	Function
Browse	If available, displays the list of tracks in the Now Playing playlist.
New Search	This option, which is available under browse, allows you to play all tracks or to filter the available media into one of the below categories.
	Play All
	Playlists
	Artists
	Albums
	Songs
	Genres
	Podcasts
	Audio books
	Composers
A-Z Jump	This button allows you to choose a specific letter to view within the category you are browsing.
Explore Device	If available, this allows you to browse the folders and files on your USB device.

USB Port



E201595

The USB port is in the center console or on the instrument panel.

This feature allows you to plug in USB media devices, memory sticks, flash drives or thumb drives, and charge devices if they support this feature.

Select this option to play audio from your USB device.

Apps

The system supports the use of certain audio apps such as Pandora or iHeartRadio through a USB or bluetooth-enabled device.

Each app gives you different on-screen options depending on the app's content. See **Apps** (page 234).

Supported Media Players, Formats and Metadata Information

The system is capable of hosting nearly any digital media player, including iPod, iPhone, and most USB drives.

Supported audio formats include MP3, WMA, WAV, AAC, and FLAC.

Supported audio file extensions include MP3, WMA, WAV, M4A, M4B, AAC, and FLAC.

Supported USB file systems include: FAT, exFAT, and NTFS.

SYNC 3 is also able to organize the media from your USB device by metadata tags. Metadata tags, which are descriptive software identifiers embedded in the media files, provide information about the file.

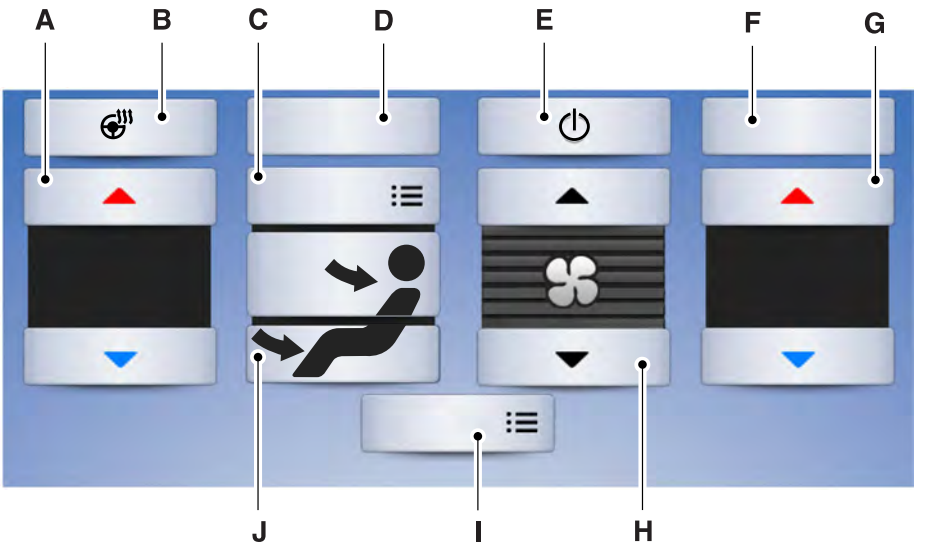
If your indexed media files contain no information embedded in these metadata tags, SYNC 3 may classify the empty metadata tags as unknown.

SYNC 3 is capable of indexing up to 50,000 songs per USB device, for up to 10 devices.

CLIMATE

Touch the climate button on the touchscreen to access your climate control features. Depending on your vehicle line and option package, your climate screen may look different from one of the screens shown below. Your screen may not contain all of the features shown.

Note: *You can switch temperature units between Fahrenheit and Celsius. See* ***Settings*** *(page 235).*



E224964

Callout	Item	Description
A	Left-hand front seat temperature:	Touch up or down to adjust the temperature.
B	Heated steering wheel:	Touch the heated steering wheel icon to switch the heated steering wheel on and off (if equipped).
C	Defrost	A pop up appears on the screen to display the defrost options.

Callout	Item	Description
	MAX Defrost:	Touch the button to maximize defrosting. Outside air flows through the windshield vents, the fan automatically adjusts to the highest speed and the temperature dial returns to the full heat position. You can use this setting to defog or clear a thin covering of ice from the windshield. The heated rear window also automatically turns on when you select MAX Defrost.
	Defrost	Touch to clear the windshield of fog and thin ice. Touch again to return to the previous airflow selection. When on, defrost provides outside air to reduce window fogging and distributes air through the windshield defroster vents and demister vents. **Note:** To prevent window fogging, you cannot select recirculated air when Defrost is on.
D	AUTO	Touch the button to switch on automatic operation. Select the desired temperature using the temperature control. The system adjusts fan speed, air distribution, air conditioning operation, and selects outside air or recirculated air to heat or cool the vehicle in order to maintain the desired temperature.
E	Power	Touch the button to switch the system on and off. Switching off the climate control system prevents outside air from entering the vehicle.
F	DUAL	This button lights up when the passenger controls are active. To switch the dual zone operation off and link the passenger temperature to the driver temperature, touch the DUAL button to switch it off.
G	Right-hand front seat temperature	Touch up or down to adjust the temperature.

Callout	Item	Description
H	Fan speed:	Touch up or down to increase or decrease the volume of air circulated in your vehicle.
I	A/C	Touch to switch the air conditioning on or off. Use A/C with recirculated air to improve cooling performance and efficiency. A/C engages automatically in MAX A/C, defrost and footwell/defrost
	MAX A/C	Touch to cool your vehicle with recirculated air. Touch again for normal A/C operation. MAX A/C distributes air through instrument panel vents and may help reduce odors from entering your vehicle. MAX A/C is more economical and efficient than normal A/C mode.
	A/C	Touch to switch the air conditioning on or off. Use A/C with recirculated air to improve cooling performance and efficiency. A/C engages automatically in MAX A/C, defrost and footwell/defrost
	Recirculated air:	Touch to switch the recirculated air on or off which may reduce the amount of time needed to cool down the interior and help reduce odors from reaching the interior. Recirculated air also engages automatically when you select MAX A/C. You can engage this manually in any airflow mode except defrost. It may also turn off in all airflow modes except MAX A/C to reduce fog potential.
J	Manual airflow distribution controls:	Select these controls individually or together to direct the air flow to the desired area.
	Panel:	Distributes air through the instrument panel vents.
	Floor:	Distributes air through the demister vents, floor vents and rear seat floor vents.

PHONE

WARNING

Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Hands-free calling is one of the main features of the system. Once you pair your cell phone, you can access many options using the touchscreen or voice commands. While the system supports a variety of features, many are dependent on your cell phone's functionality.

Pairing Your Cell Phone for the First Time

Pair your Bluetooth-enabled phone with the system before using the functions in hands-free mode.

Switch on Bluetooth on your device to begin pairing. See your phone's manual if necessary.

To add a phone, select:

Menu Item
Add Phone

1. Follow the on-screen instructions.
2. A prompt alerts you to search for the system on your phone.
3. Select your vehicle's make and model as it displays on your phone.
4. Confirm that the six-digit number appearing on your phone matches the six-digit number on the touchscreen.
5. The touchscreen indicates when the pairing is successful.
6. Your phone may prompt you to give the system permission to access information. To check your phone's compatibility, see your phone's manual or visit the website.

Alternatively, to add a phone, select:

Menu Item
Add Phone
Then select:
Discover Other Bluetooth Devices

1. Follow the on-screen instructions.
2. Select your phone's name when it appears on the touchscreen.
3. Confirm that the six-digit number appearing on your phone matches the six-digit number on the touchscreen.
4. The touchscreen indicates when the pairing is successful.
5. Your phone may prompt you to give the system permission to access information. To check your phone's compatibility, see your phone's manual or visit the website.

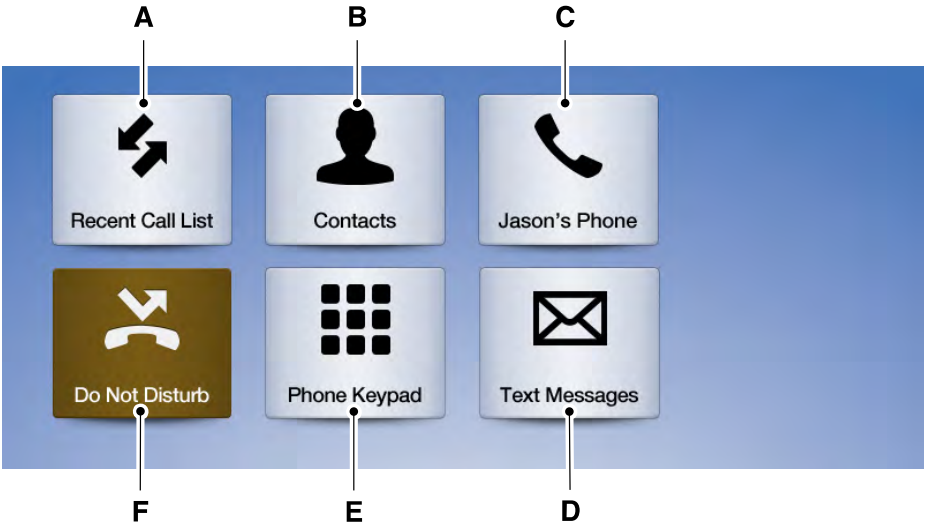
At a minimum, most cell phones with Bluetooth wireless technology support the following functions:

- Answering an incoming call.
- Ending a call.
- Dialing a number.
- Call waiting notification.
- Caller identification.

Other features, such as text messaging using Bluetooth and automatic phonebook download, are phone-dependent features.

Phone Menu

This menu becomes available after pairing a phone.



E205447

Item	Menu Item	Action and Description			
A	Recent Call List	Displays your recent calls. You can place a call by selecting an entry from this list. You can also sort the calls by selecting the drop down menu at the top of the screen. You can choose:			
		All	Incoming	Outgoing	Missed
B	Contacts	All of your contacts from your phone display in alphabetical order.			
		A-Z Jump		Selecting this button allows you to choose a specific letter to view.	

Item	Menu Item	Action and Description	
C	Phone Settings	Displays the name of your phone and takes you to the phone settings options. From this menu, you can pair subsequent devices, set ring tones and alerts.	
D	Text Messages	Displays all recent text messages.	
E	Phone Keypad	Use this keypad to dial in a phone number. Use the backspace button to delete numbers.	
		Call	Press this button to begin a call.
F	Do Not Disturb	Touch this button to send all calls directly to your voicemail. Text message notifications do not display on the screen. All ringtones and alerts are set to silent.	

Users with phones having voice services may see a button to access the feature. For example, iPhone users see a Siri button. A press and hold of the voice button on the steering wheel also accesses this feature.

Making Calls

There are many ways to make calls from the SYNC 3 system, including using voice commands. See **Using Voice Recognition** (page 209). You can use the touchscreen to place calls as well.

To call a number in your contacts, select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Contacts	You can then select the name of the contact you want to call. Any numbers stored for that contact display along with any stored contact photos. You can then select the number that you want to call. The system begins the call.

To call a number from your recent calls, select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Recent Call List	You can then select an entry that you want to call. The system begins the call.

To call a number that is not stored in your phone, select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Phone Keypad	Select the digits of the number you wish to call.
Call	The system begins the call.

Pressing the backspace button deletes the last digit you typed.

Receiving Calls

During an incoming call, an audible tone sounds. Caller information appears in the display if it is available.

To accept the call, select:

Menu Item
Accept

Note: *You can also accept the call by pressing the phone button on the steering wheel.*

To reject the call, select:

Menu Item
Reject

Note: *You can also reject the call by pressing the phone button on the steering wheel.*

Ignore the call by doing nothing. SYNC 3 logs it as a missed call.

During a Phone Call

During a phone call, the contacts name and number display on the screen along with the call duration.

The phone status items are also visible:

- Signal Strength.
- Battery.

You can select any of the following during an active phone call:

Item	
End Call	Immediately end a phone call. You can also press the button on the steering wheel.
Keypad	Press this to access the phone keypad.
Mute	You can switch the microphone off so the caller does not hear you.

Item	
Privacy	Transfer the call to the cell phone or back to SYNC 3.

Text Messaging

Note: *Downloading and sending text messages using Bluetooth are cell phone-dependent features.*

Note: *Certain features in text messaging are speed-dependent and not available when your vehicle is traveling at speeds over 5 km/h.*

Receiving a Text Message

When a new message arrives, an audible tone sounds and the screen displays a pop-up with the caller name and ID, if supported by your cell phone. You can select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Hear It	Have SYNC 3 read the message to you.
View	View the text on the touchscreen.
Call	To call the sender.
Reply	You can select from 15 preset messages. Press the message that you would like to use and confirm to send the message. SYNC 3 confirms when the message is sent successfully.
Close	To exit the screen.

Smartphone Connectivity (If Equipped)

SYNC 3 allows you to use Apple CarPlay and Android Auto to access your phone.

When you use Apple CarPlay or Android Auto, you can:

- Make calls.
- Send and receive messages.
- Listen to music.
- Use your phone's voice assistant.

Apple CarPlay and Android Auto disables some SYNC 3 features.

Most Apple CarPlay and Android Auto features use mobile data.

Apple CarPlay

Apple CarPlay requires an iPhone 5 or newer with iOS 7.1 or newer. Updating to the latest iOS version is recommended.

1. Plug your phone into a USB port. See **USB Port** (page 198).

2. Select Apple CarPlay on the touchscreen.

To disable this feature from the Settings screen, select:

Menu Item
Apple CarPlay Preferences
Your device is listed if SYNC detects Apple CarPlay. Select the name of your device and select:
Disable

To return to SYNC 3, go to the Apple CarPlay home screen and select the SYNC app.

Note: *Contact Apple for Apple CarPlay support.*

Android Auto

Android Auto is compatible with most devices with Android 5.0 or newer.

1. Download the Android Auto app to your device from Google Play to prepare your device (this may require mobile data usage).
2. Plug your device into a USB port. See **USB Port** (page 198).

Note: *Android Auto may default to off, so you may need to enable it from the Settings screen.*

To disable this feature from the Settings screen, select:

Menu Item
Android Auto Preferences
Your device is listed if SYNC detects Android Auto. Select the name of your device and select:
Disable

Note: *You may need to slide your Settings screen to the left to select Apple CarPlay Preferences or Android Auto Preferences.*

To return to SYNC 3, select the speedometer icon in the Android Auto menu bar at the bottom of the touchscreen, and then touch the option to return to SYNC.

Note: *Contact Google for Android Auto support.*

NAVIGATION

Your navigation system is comprised of two main features, destination mode and map mode.

Map Mode

Map mode shows advanced viewing comprised of 2D city maps, 3D landmarks and 3D city models (when available). 2D city maps show detailed outlines of buildings, visible land use, landscape features, and detailed railroad infrastructure for the most essential cities around the globe.

3D landmarks appear as clear, visible objects that are typically recognizable and have a certain tourism value.

3D city models are complete 3D models of entire city areas including navigable roads, parks, rivers and rendered buildings. 3D landmarks and city models appear in 3D map mode only. Coverage of these varies and improves with updated map releases.



Select the zoom in icon to see a closer view of the map.



Select the zoom out icon to see a farther away view of the map.

You can adjust the view in preset increments. You can also pinch to zoom in or out of the map.

The information bar tells you the names of streets, cities or landmarks as you hover over them with the crosshair curser.

You can change your view of the map by tapping on the location indicator icon on the right hand side of the screen. You can choose from the following options:



Heading up (2D map) This always shows the direction of forward travel to be upward on the screen. This view is available for map scales up to 5 km.



North up (2D map) always shows the northern direction to be upward on the screen.



3D map mode provides an elevated perspective of the map. Adjust this viewing angle and rotate the map 180 degrees by touching the map twice, and then dragging your finger along the shaded bar with arrows at the bottom of the map.



Re-center the map by pressing this icon whenever you scroll the map away from your vehicle's current location.



Points of Interest (POI) grouping icon: You can choose up to three POI icons to display on the map. If the chosen POIs are located close together or are at the same location a box is used to display a single category icon instead of repeating the same icon, in order to reduce clutter. When you select the box on the map, a pop-up appears indicating how many POIs are in this location. Select the pop up to see a list of the available POIs. You can scroll through and select POIs from this list.

If your vehicle is low on charge or fuel, station icons automatically display on the map.

You can choose to display traffic icons on the map representing twelve different types of incidents. See **Settings** (page 235).

You can set a destination by hovering above a location and selecting:

Button
Start

Destination Mode

To set a destination, press:

Menu Item	Description
Destination	
Enter a navigation destination in any of the following formats:	
Search	Street Address (number, street, city, state) For example "12 Mainstreet Dearborn MI"

Menu Item	Description	
	Partial Address (number, street) (number, street and postal code	
	City (name or zip code)	
	Point of Interest (name or category)	
	Intersection (street 1 / street 2) (street 1 and street 2) (street 1 & street 2) (street 1 @ street 2) (street 1 at street 2)	
	Latitude and Longitude (##.###### , ##.######) One to six decimal places are accepted.	
	You are given autocomplete options below the address bar to select as you type. If you do not give an exact destination, a menu displays with your possible selections.	
Previous Destinations	Collections of your last 40 navigation destinations display here. You can select any option from the list to select it as your destination. These locations cannot be deleted individually. To delete them, perform a master reset. See **SYNC™ 3 Troubleshooting** (page 248).	
Home	Select to navigate to your set Home destination. The time it takes to travel from your current location to Home displays. To set your Home, press:	
	Home	A prompt appears asking if you would like to create a favorite for home. Select:
	Yes	Enter a location into the search bar and press:
	Save	
Work	Select to navigate to your set Work destination. The time it takes to travel from your current location to Work displays. To set your Work:	

Menu Item	Description	
	Work	A prompt appears asking if you would like to create a favorite for work. Select:
	Yes	Enter a location into the search bar and press:
	Save	
Favorites	Favorites include any location you have previously saved. To add Favorites:	
	Add a Favorite	Select this button and enter a location into the destination bar.
	Search	Select this option to have the system locate the address you have entered.
	Save	Select this button when the address you have entered appears on the screen.
Point of Interest (POI) Categories	POI categories that may display (based on market and vehicle configuration):	
	Food	
	Fuel	
	hotel	
	ATM	
	See All	Press to view additional categories.
	Inside of these categories you can search by:	
	Nearby	
	Along Route	
	Near Destination	
	In a City	

Once you have chosen your destination, press:

Menu Item	Action and Description	
Save	This saves the destination to your favorites.	
Start	This shows you a map of your entire route. You can then choose from three different options.	
	Fastest	Uses the fastest moving roads.
	Shortest	Uses the shortest distance.
	Economical Route	Uses the most fuel-efficient route.
	The time and distance for each route also displays.	
Cancel	On the route screen, you can choose to cancel the current navigation.	

Once you have chosen you destination, press:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Start	The system uses a variety of screens and prompts to guide you to your destination. During Route guidance, you can press the maneuver arrow icon on the map if you want the system to repeat route guidance instructions. When the system repeats the last guidance instruction, it updates the distance to the next guidance instruction, since it detects that the vehicle is moving. The navigation map shows your estimated time of arrival, remaining travel time and the distance to your destination. SYNC 3 may not always announce vehicle arrival at the exact point of your destination and you may have to cancel a route manually.

Navigation Menu

In map mode and during active navigation you can access the navigation menu.

During active navigation, touch the bottom of the screen to view the menu and other buttons.

To access the Navigation menu, press:

Button		
Menu		
You can then select:		
Screen View	Full Map	A full screen map displays during navigation.

Button		
	Highway Exit Info	
	Turn List	Only available during an active route. Displays all of the turns on the current route. You can choose to avoid any road on the turn list by selecting the road from the list. A screen then appears and you can press:
		Avoid
		The system calculates a new route and displays a new turn list.
Navigation Settings	Press this button to adjust your preferences. See **Settings** (page 235).	
Where Am I?	Provides your current location city and the nearest road.	
The following are only available on the menu during an active navigation route:		
Mute Guidance	Selecting this option switches off the audio navigation guidance. Press the button again to un-mute guidance.	
View Route	Press this to see a map of the full route.	
Detour	An alternate route displays in comparison with the current route.	
Edit Waypoints	Only available if you have an active waypoint on your route. See **Waypoints** later in this section for information on how to set waypoints.	
	Use this button to re-order or remove your waypoints.	
	You can also have the system set the order for you by pressing:	Optimize Order
	To return to your route press:	Go

Waypoints

You can add a waypoint to a navigation route as a destination along your route.

To add a waypoint:

1. Select the search icon (magnifying glass) while on an active route. This brings up the destination menu.

2. Set your destination using any of the given methods. Once the destination has been selected, the screen allows you to set the destination as a waypoint by selecting:

Menu Item	
Add Waypoint	The waypoint list then appears and you are able to re-order all of your waypoints by selecting the menu icon on the right hand side of the location. You can select up to five waypoints.
You can also have the system set the order for you by pressing:	Optimize Order
To return to your route, press:	Go

Navigation Map Updates

Annual navigation map updates are available for purchase through your dealership.

APPS

The system enables voice, steering wheel, and touch screen control of SYNC 3 AppLink enabled smartphone apps. Once an app is running through AppLink, you can control main features of the app through voice commands and steering wheel controls.

Note: *Available AppLink enabled apps will vary by market.*

Note: *You must pair and connect your smartphone via Bluetooth to SYNC 3 to access AppLink.*

Note: *iPhone users need to connect the phone to the USB port via an Apple authorized cable.*

Note: *Make sure you have an active account for the app that you have downloaded. Some apps will work automatically with no setup. Other apps will want you to configure your personal settings and personalize your experience by creating stations or favorites. We recommend you do this at home or outside of your vehicle.*

Note: *We encourage you to review the smartphone app's terms of service and privacy policies because Ford is not responsible for your app or its use of data.*

Note: *AppLink is a native SYNC system feature. Accessing mobile apps through AppLink is only possible when Android Auto or Apple CarPlay are disabled. Some apps may only be accessible in the car through Applink and others only through Android Auto or Apple CarPlay. Please refer to the Smartphone Connectivity information to disable Android Auto or Apple CarPlay.*

Note: *In order to use an app with SYNC 3, the App needs to be running in the background of your phone. If you shut down the app on your phone, it shuts down the app on SYNC 3 as well.*

Note: *If a SYNC 3 AppLink compatible app is not shown in the Apps Domain, make sure the required app is running on the mobile device.*

Menu Item	Action and Description
Connect Mobile Apps	SYNC 3 will search and connect to compatible app(s) running on your mobile device.

Enabling SYNC 3 Mobile Apps

In order to enable mobile apps, SYNC 3 requires user consent to send and receive app authorization information and updates using the data plan associated with the connected device.

The connected device sends data to Ford in the United States. The information is encrypted and includes your VIN, SYNC 3 module number, odometer, usage statistics and debugging information. We retain this data for only as long as necessary to provide this service, troubleshoot, and improve products and services and to offer you products and services that may interest you where allowed by law.

Note: *You must enable mobile apps for each connected device the first time you select a mobile app using the system.*

Note: *Ford reserves the right to limit functionality or deactivate mobile apps at any time.*

Note: *Standard data rates apply. Ford is not responsible for any additional charges you may receive from your service provider, when your vehicle sends or receives data through the connected device. This includes any additional charges incurred due to driving in areas when roaming out of a home network.*

You can enable and disable apps through settings. See **Settings** (page 235).

App Permissions

The system organizes the App permissions into groups. You can grant these group permissions individually. You can change a permission group status any time when not driving, by using the settings menu. While in the settings menu, you can also see the data included in each group.

When you launch an app using SYNC 3, the system may ask you to grant certain permissions, for example Vehicle information, Driving characteristics, GPS and Speed, and/or Push notifications. You can enable all groups or none of them during the initial app permissions prompts. The settings menu offers individual group permission control.

Note: *You are only prompted to grant permissions the first time you use an app with SYNC 3.*

Note: *If you disable group permissions, apps will still be enabled to work with SYNC 3 unless you deactivate All Apps in the settings menu.*

SETTINGS

Under this menu, you can access and adjust the settings for many of the system features. To access additional settings, swipe the screen left or right.

Sound

Pressing this button allows you to adjust the following:

Sound Settings	
Reset All	Returns Treble, Midrange, and Bass sound settings to factory levels.
Treble	Adjusts the high frequency level.
Midrange	Adjusts the middle frequency level.
Bass	Adjusts the low frequency level.
Balance / Fade	Adjusts the sound ratio from side to side or front to back.
Speed Adaptive Volume	Adjusts the amount the audio system volume increases with speed, or turns the feature off.
Occupancy Mode	Optimizes the sound based on the location of the listeners.
Sound Settings	Stereo
	Surround

Your vehicle might not have all of these features.

Media Player

This button is available when a media device such as a Bluetooth Stereo or USB device is the active audio source. Pressing the button allows you to access the following options for active devices only.

Menu Item	Action and Description		
Podcast Speed	For some Apple devices, SYNC 3 can adjust the playback speed of podcasts. When a podcast is playing, you can choose:		
	Slower	Normal	Faster
Audiobook Speed	For some Apple devices, SYNC 3 can adjust the playback speed of audiobooks. When an audiobook is playing, you can choose:		
	Slower	Normal	Faster
Cover Art Priority	Media Player	Cover art displays from your device's music files. If no cover art for the files exists on the device, then the Gracenote Database provides cover art.	

Menu Item	Action and Description	
	Gracenote®	The Gracenote Database supplied cover art is used for your music files. This overrides any cover art from your device.
Reset Media	Erase the stored in media information in order to re- index.	
Gracenote® Database Info	This allows you to view the version level of the Gracenote Database.	
Device Information	This allows you to view the manufacturer and model number of your media device.	

Menu Item	Action and Description		
Podcast Speed	For some Apple devices, SYNC 3 can adjust the playback speed of podcasts. When a podcast is playing, you can choose:		
	Slower	Normal	Faster
Audiobook Speed	For some Apple devices, SYNC 3 can adjust the playback speed of audiobooks. When an audiobook is playing, you can choose:		
	Slower	Normal	Faster
Cover Art Priority	Media Player	Cover art displays from your device's music files. If no cover art for the files exists on the device, then the Gracenote Database provides cover art.	
	Gracenote®	The Gracenote Database supplied cover art is used for your music files. This overrides any cover art from your device.	
Reset Media	Erase the stored media information in order to re-index.		
Gracenote® Database Info	This allows you to view the version level of the Gracenote Database.		
Device Information	This allows you to view the manufacturer and model number of your media device.		

Clock

To adjust the time, select the up and down arrows on either side of the screen. The arrows on the left adjust the hour and arrows on the right adjust the minute. You can then select AM or PM.

You can adjust the following features:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Clock Format	Select how time displays.
Auto Time Zone Update	When active, the clock adjusts to time zone changes. This feature is only available in vehicles with navigation.
Reset Clock to GPS Time	When selected, the vehicle clock resets to GPS satellite time.

The system automatically saves any updates you make to the settings.

Bluetooth

Pressing this button allows you to access the following:

Menu Item	Action
Bluetooth	Turning Bluetooth off disconnects all devices and does not permit new connections.

You must activate Bluetooth to pair a Bluetooth-enabled device.

The processes of pairing a Bluetooth device is the same as pairing a phone. **See Pairing a Device** in Phone settings for how to pair a device and the available options.

Phone

Pair your Bluetooth-enabled phone with the system before using the functions in hands-free mode.

Switch on Bluetooth on your device to begin pairing. See your phone's manual if necessary.

To add a phone, select:

Menu Item
Add Phone

1. Follow the on-screen instructions.
2. A prompt alerts you to search for the system on your phone.
3. Select your vehicle's make and model as it displays on your phone.
4. Confirm that the six-digit number appearing on your phone matches the six-digit number on the touchscreen.
5. The touchscreen indicates when the pairing is successful.

6. Your phone may prompt you to give the system permission to access information. To check your phone's compatibility, see your phone's manual or visit the website.

Alternatively, to add a phone, select:

Menu Item
Add Phone
Then select:
Discover Other Bluetooth Devices

1. Follow the on-screen instructions.
2. Select your phone's name when it appears on the touchscreen.
3. Confirm that the six-digit number appearing on your phone matches the six-digit number on the touchscreen.
4. The touchscreen indicates when the pairing is successful.
5. Your phone may prompt you to give the system permission to access information. To check your phone's compatibility, see your phone's manual or visit the website.

Other features, such as text messaging using Bluetooth and automatic phonebook download, are phone-dependent features.

Once you have paired a device you can adjust the following options.

Once you have paired a device you can adjust the following options.

Menu Item	Action and Description
View Devices	
You can then select:	
Add a Bluetooth Device	You can add a Bluetooth-enabled device by following the steps in the previous table.
You can select a phone by touching the name of the phone on the screen. You then have the following options:	
Connect	Depending on the status of the device, you can select either of these options to interact with the selected device.
Disconnect	
Device Information	Allows you to see phone and device information.
Make Primary	Allows you to select this device to be your preferred device.
Delete	Removes the selected device from the system.

Menu Item	Action and Description	
Manage Contacts		
You can then select:		
Auto-Download Contacts	Enable this option to have SYNC 3 periodically re-download your phonebook to keep your contact list up to date.	
Sort By:	Choose how you would like the system to display your contacts. You can choose:	
	First Name	Last Name
Re-download Contacts	Select this option to re-download your contact list manually.	
Delete Contacts	Select this option to delete the in vehicle contact list. Deleting the in vehicle list does not erase the contact list on the connected phone.	

Menu Item	Action and Description
Set Phone Ringtone	
You can then select:	
No Ringtone	No sound plays when a call comes to your phone.
Use Phone Ringtone	The currently selected ringtone on your phone plays when you receive a call. This option may not be available for all phones. If this option is available, it is the default setting.
You can also select one of the three available ringers.	

Menu Item	Action and Description
Text Messaging	
You can then select:	
No Alert (Silence)	No sound plays when a message comes to your phone.
You can select one of the three available notification sounds.	
Voice Readout	When enabled, a voice prompt alerts you when you receive a new message.

You can enable and disable the following options as well:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Mute Audio in Privacy	When enabled, vehicle audio (such as radio or apps) is muted for the duration of the phone call even when the phone call is in privacy.
Roaming Warning	When enabled, an alert displays that your phone is roaming when you attempt to place a call.
Low Battery Notification	When enabled, a message displays when the battery on your phone is running low.

Radio

This button is available if a Radio source such as AM or FM is the active media source. Pressing the button allows you to access the following features:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Radio Text	This feature is available when FM Radio is your active media source. Activate this feature to have the system display radio text.
Autoset Presets (AST)	Refresh
	Selecting this option stores the six strongest stations in your current location to the last preset bank of the currently tuned source.

Navigation

You can adjust many of the Navigation preferences by selecting the following menus.

Map Preferences

Menu Item	Action and Description
Map Preferences	
Then select any of the following:	
3D City Model	When this option is active, the system shows 3D renderings of buildings.

Menu Item	Action and Description	
Breadcrumbs	When enabled, your vehicle's previously traveled route displays with white dots.	
POI Icons	Enable this feature to display up to 3 POI icons on the navigation map.	
	Once this feature is activated you can select the icons you want displayed by selecting:	Select POIs

Route Preferences

Menu Item	Second Level Messages, Actions and Descriptions		
Route Preferences			
Then select any of the following:			
Preferred Route	Choose to have the system display your chosen route type.		
	Fastest	Shortest	Eco
Always Use ___ Route	Bypass route selection in destination programming. The system only calculates one route based on your preferred route setting. When activated, the system uses your selected route type to calculate only one route to the desired destination.		
Automatically Find Parking	The system searches for and displays available parking locations as you approach your destination.		
Eco Time Penalty	Select a level of cost for the calculated Eco Route. The higher the setting, the longer the time allotment is for the route.		
Dynamic Route Guidance	Enable or disable considering traffic information when planning a route. The system can find a faster route based on heavy traffic flow information or detect a Road Closed incident and find a detour route if possible.		

Navigation Preferences

Menu Item	Action and Description
Navigation Preferences	
Guidance Prompts	You can adjust how the system provides prompts.
Then select any of the following:	
Voice & Tones	

Menu Item	Action and Description
Voice Only	
Tones Only	
Hazard Spot Warning	
Then select any of the following:	
Off	
Visual Only	
Visual & Tones	

Mobile Apps

You can enable the control of compatible mobile apps running on your Bluetooth or USB device on SYNC 3. In order to enable mobile apps, SYNC 3 requires user consent to send and receive app authorization information and updates using the data plan associated with the connected device.

The connected devices sends data to Ford in the United States. The encrypted information includes your VIN, SYNC 3 module number, anonymous usage statistics and debugging information. Updates may take place automatically.

Note: *Standard data rates will apply. Ford is not responsible for any additional charges you may receive from your service provider, when your vehicle sends or receives data through the connected device. This includes any additional charges incurred due to driving in areas when roaming out of a home network.*

Menu Item	Action and Description		
Mobile Apps	Enable or disable the use of mobile apps on SYNC 3. Disabling mobile apps in the settings menu disables automatic updates and the use of mobile apps on SYNC 3.		
	You can view the status of mobile app permissions in the settings menu.		
Once Mobile Apps is enabled, you have the following options:			
Update Mobile Apps	This provides information on the current state of available app updates.		
	There are three possible statuses:		
	Update Needed	Up-To-Date	Updating Mobile Apps...

Menu Item	Action and Description		
	The system has detected a new app requiring authorization or a general permissions update is required.	No update is required.	The system is trying to receive an update.
	Request Update		Select this button if an update is required and you want to request this update manually. For example, when your mobile device is connected to a Wi-Fi hotspot, select:
			Request Update
All Apps	Grant or deny permissions to all apps at once.		
There may also be SYNC 3 enabled apps listed under these options.	Grant or deny an individual app particular permissions. App permissions are organized into groups. By pressing the info book icon, you can see which signals are included in each group.		

Note: *Ford is not responsible or liable for any damages or loss of privacy relating to usage of an app, or dissemination of any vehicle data that you approve Ford to provide to an app.*

General

Access and adjust the system settings, voice features, as well as phone, navigation and wireless settings.

Menu Item	
Language	Select to chose the language that the touch screen displays.
Distance	Select to display units in kilometers or miles.
Temperature	Select to display units in Celsius or Fahrenheit.
Touch Screen Beep	Select to have the system beep to confirm choices made through the touchscreen.

Menu Item	
Automatic System Updates	When you activate this option, the system automatically updates when you have an available Internet connection through a Wi-Fi network or mobile connection.
About	Information pertaining to the system and its software.
Software Licenses	Documentation of the software license for the system.
Master Reset	Select to restore factory defaults. This erases all personal settings and personal data.

Wi-Fi

You can adjust the following:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Wi-Fi	Enable this option to connect to Wi-Fi for SYNC 3 vehicle software updates.
View Available Networks	This provides you with a list of available Wi-Fi networks within range.
	Clicking on a network from the list allows you to connect or disconnect from that network. The system may require a security code to connect.
	When you click the information button next to a network, more information about the network displays such as the signal strength, connection status and security type.
Wi-Fi Available Notifications	The system alerts you when your vehicle is parked and a Wi-Fi network is within range if SYNC is not already connected.

Ambient Lighting (If Equipped)

Tap a color once to active ambient lighting. This sets the color to the highest intensity.

You can drag the colors up and down to increase or decrease the intensity.

To switch ambient lighting off, press the active color once or drag the active color all the way down to zero intensity.

Vehicle

Note: *You vehicle may not have all of these features.*

Camera Settings

To make adjustments using the touchscreen, select:

Message	Action and Description
Camera Settings	Adjusts the vehicle's camera settings.
Then select from the following:	
Rear Camera Delay	You can enable or disable this option using the slider.

You can find more information on the rear-view camera system in the parking aids chapter of your owner manual.

Onboard Modem Serial Number (ESN)

Selecting this button on the settings menu shows you the ESN number for your system. You need this number for certain registrations such as Satellite Radio.

Display

To make adjustments using the touchscreen, select:

Menu Item	Action and Description	
Brightness	Make the screen display brighter or dimmer.	
Mode	You can select:	
	Auto	The screen automatically switches between day and night modes based on the outside light level.

You can select the following features to update their settings.

Door Keypad Code

Select this button to add or erase a personal door keypad code. To add or erase a personal code, you first need to enter the five-digit factory set code. You can find this code on the owner's wallet card in the glove box or from your authorized dealer.

Menu Item	Action and Description	
	Day	The screen displays with a light background to enhance daytime viewing.
	Night	The screen displays with a darker background to make nighttime viewing easier.
	Off	The screen goes black and does not display anything. To switch the screen back on, simply tap the screen.
Auto Dim	Enable this option to automatically dim the display brightness based on ambient lighting conditions.	

Voice Control

You can adjust the voice control settings by selecting the following options.

Menu Item	
Advanced Mode	Enable this option to remove additional voice prompts and confirmations.
Phone Confirmation	Enable this option to have the system confirm a contacts name with you before making a call.
Voice Command List	Enable this option to have the system display a list of available voice commands when the voice button is pressed.

Valet Mode

Valet mode allows you to lock the system. No information is accessible until the system is unlocked with the correct PIN.

When you select valet mode a pop up appears informing you that a four digit code must be entered to enable and disable valet mode. You can use any PIN you chose but you must use the same PIN to disable valet mode. The system asks you to input the code.

Note: *If the system locks and you need to reset your pin, please contact an authorized dealer.*

To enable valet mode, enter your chosen PIN. The system then asks to confirm your PIN by reentering it. The system then locks.

To unlock the system, enter the same pin number. The system reconnects to your phone and all of your options are available again.

SYNC™ 3 TROUBLESHOOTING

Your SYNC 3 system is easy to use. However, should questions arise, please refer to the tables below.

Cell phone issues		
Issue	**Possible cause**	**Possible solution**
There is background noise during a phone call.	The audio control settings on your cell phone may be affecting SYNC 3 performance.	Refer to your device's manual about audio adjustments.
During a call, I can hear the other person but they cannot hear me.	Possible cell phone malfunction.	Try switching your cell phone off, resetting it or removing the battery, then try again.
		Make sure that the microphone for SYNC 3 is not set to off. Look for the microphone icon on the phone screen.
During a call, I cannot hear the other person and they cannot hear me.	The system may need to be restarted.	To restart your system, shut down the engine, open and close the door, and then lock the door and wait for 2-3 minutes. Make sure that your SYNC 3 screen is black and lighted USB port is off.
SYNC 3 is not able to download my phonebook.	This is a cell phone-dependent feature.	Check your cell phone's compatibility.
	Possible cell phone malfunction.	Make sure you allow SYNC 3 to retrieve contacts from your phone. Refer to your cell manual.
		You must switch on your cell phone and the automatic phonebook download feature on SYNC 3.
		Try switching your cell phone off, resetting it or removing the battery, then try again.

Cell phone issues		
Issue	**Possible cause**	**Possible solution**
The system says "Phonebook downloaded" but my SYNC 3 phonebook is empty or is missing contacts.	Limitations on your cell phone's capability.	Make sure you allow SYNC 3 to retrieve contacts from your phone. Refer to your cell manual.
		If the missing contacts are stored on your SIM card, move them to your cell phone's memory.
		You must switch on your cell phone and the automatic phonebook download feature on SYNC 3.
I am having trouble connecting my cell phone to SYNC 3.	This is a cell phone-dependent feature.	Check your cell phone's compatibility.
	Possible cell phone malfunction.	Try switching your cell phone off, resetting it or removing the battery, then try again.
		Try deleting your device from SYNC 3 and deleting SYNC from your device, then trying again.
		Always check the security and auto accept prompt settings relative to the SYNC 3 Bluetooth connection on your cell phone.
		Update your cell phone's firmware.
		Switch the auto download setting off.
Text messaging is not working on SYNC 3.	This is a cell phone-dependent feature.	Check your cell phone's compatibility.
	Possible cell phone malfunction.	Try switching your cell phone off, resetting it or removing the battery, then try again.
	iPhone	• Go to your cell phone's Settings. • Go to the Bluetooth Menu. • Press the blue circle to the right of the device named SYNC enter the next menu. • Turn Show Notifications on. • Disconnect then reconnect your iPhone form the SYNC 3 system to activate this settings update.

Cell phone issues		
Issue	**Possible cause**	**Possible solution**
		Your iPhone is now set up to forward incoming text messages to SYNC 3. Repeat these steps for every other SYNC 3 vehicle that you connect. Your iPhone will only forward incoming text messages to SYNC 3 if the iPhone is not unlocked in the messaging application. Replying to text messages using SYNC 3 is not supported by iPhone. Text messages from WhatsApp and Facebook Messenger are not supported.
Audible text messages do not work on my cell phone.	This is a cell phone-dependent feature.	Your cell phone must support downloading text messages through Bluetooth to receive incoming text messages.
	This is a cell phone limitation.	Because each cell phone is different, refer to your device's manual for the specific cell phone you are pairing. In fact, there can be differences between cell phones due to brand, model, service provider and software version.

USB and Bluetooth Stereo issues		
Issue	**Possible cause**	**Possible solution**
I am having trouble connecting my device.	Possible device malfunction.	Disconnect the device from SYNC 3. Try switching your device off, resetting it or removing the battery, then reconnect it to SYNC 3.
		Make sure you are using the manufacturer's cable.
		Make sure to correctly insert the USB cable into the device and your vehicle's USB port.
		Make sure that the device does not have an auto-install program or active security settings.
	The device has a lock screen enabled.	Make sure your device is unlocked before connecting it to SYNC 3.

USB and Bluetooth Stereo issues		
Issue	**Possible cause**	**Possible solution**
SYNC 3 does not recognize my device when I start my vehicle.	This is a device limitation.	Make sure you are not leaving the device in your vehicle during very hot or cold temperatures.
Bluetooth audio does not stream.	This is a device-dependent feature.	Make sure you connect the device to SYNC 3 and that you have started the media player on your device.
	The device is not connected.	
SYNC 3 does not recognize music that is on my device.	Your music files may not contain the correct artist, song title, album or genre information.	Make sure that all song details are populated.
	The file may be corrupted.	Try replacing the corrupt file with a new version.
	The song may have copyright protection that does not allow it to play.	Some devices require you to change the USB settings from mass storage to media transfer protocol class.
	The file format is not supported by SYNC 3.	Convert the file to a supported format. See **Entertainment** (page 215).
	The device needs to be re-indexed.	Perform a master reset. See **Settings** (page 235).
	The device has a lock screen enabled.	Make sure your device is unlocked before connecting it to SYNC 3.
When I connect my device, I sometimes do not hear any sound.	This is a device limitation.	Disconnect the device from SYNC 3. Try switching your device off, resetting it or removing the battery, then connect it back to SYNC 3.
		To listen to Apple devices through USB, select AirPlay from the devices Control Center, then select Dock Connector.
		To listen to Apple devices through Bluetooth Stereo, select AirPlay from the devices Control Center, then select SYNC.

Wi-Fi Issues		
Issue	**Possible cause**	**Possible solution**
Failed connection.	Password error.	Verify password.
	Weak signal.	Check for a poor Wi-Fi signal.
	Multiple Access points within range with the same SSID.	Use a unique name for your SSID, don't use the default name unless it contains a unique identifier, such as part of the MAC address.
Disconnecting after successful connection.	Weak signal probably due to distance from the hotspot, obstruction or high interference.	Position the vehicle close to the hotspot with the front of the vehicle facing the hotspot direction and remove obstacles if possible. Other Wi-Fi, Bluetooth, microwave and cordless phones may cause interference.
Poor signal seen by SYNC 3 despite being near a hotspot.	There may be an obstruction between SYNC 3 and the hotspot.	If the vehicle is equipped with heated windshield, try positioning the vehicle so that the windshield is not facing the hotspot. If you have metallic window tinting but not on the windshield, position the vehicle to face the hotspot. If all windows are tinted, you can open the windows in the direction of the hotspot if that is feasible. Try to remove other obstructions that may impact signal quality such as opening the garage door.
A hotspot is not listed in the list of available networks.	The hotspot was defined as a hidden network.	Please set the network to visible and try again.

Wi-Fi Issues		
Issue	**Possible cause**	**Possible solution**
SYNC 3 is not seen when searching for Wi-Fi networks from your phone or other devices.	SYNC 3 does not provide a hotspot.	SYNC 3 currently does not provide a hotspot
Software download takes too long.	Poor signal strength, too far from the hotspot, hotspot is supporting multiple connections, slow Internet connection or other problems.	Check the signal quality (under network details), if SYNC 3 indicates good or excellent, test with another high-speed equipped hotspot where the environment is more predictable.
SYNC 3 seems to connect with a hotspot and the signal strength is excellent but the software is not being updated.	It is possible that there is no new software. The connected hotspot may be a managed one and it requires either a subscription or agreeing to the terms and conditions.	Test the connection with another device, if the hotspot requires a subscription, you may contact the service provider.

AppLink issues		
Issue	**Possible cause(s)**	**Possible solution(s)**
AppLink Mobile Applications: When I select "Find New Apps," SYNC 3 does not find any applications.	You did not connect an Applink Compatible phone to SYNC 3.	Make sure you have a compatible smartphone; an Android with OS 2.3 or higher or an iPhone 3GS or newer with iOS 5.0 or higher. Additionally, make sure you pair and connect your phone

AppLink issues		
Issue	**Possible cause(s)**	**Possible solution(s)**
		to SYNC 3 in order to find AppLink-capable apps on your device. iPhone users must also connect to a USB port with an Apple USB cable.
My phone is connected, but I still cannot find any apps.	AppLink-enabled apps are not installed and running on your mobile device.	Make sure you have downloaded and installed the latest version of the app from your phone's app store. Make sure the app is running on your phone. Some apps require you to register or login to the app on the phone before using them with AppLink. Also, some may have a "Ford SYNC" setting, so check the app's settings menu on the phone.
My phone is connected, my app(s) are running, but I still cannot find any apps.	Sometimes apps do not properly close and re-open their connection to SYNC 3, over ignition cycles, for example.	Closing and restarting apps may help SYNC 3 find the application if you cannot discover it inside the vehicle. On an Android device, if apps have an 'Exit' or 'Quit' option, then select it and restart the app. If the app does not have that option, select the phone's settings menu and select 'Apps', then find the particular app and choose 'Force stop.' Do not forget to restart the app afterward, then select "Find New Apps" on SYNC 3.

AppLink issues		
Issue	**Possible cause(s)**	**Possible solution(s)**
		On an iPhone with iOS7+, to force close an app, double tap the home button then swipe up on the app to close it. Tap the home button again, then select the app again to restart it. After a few seconds, the app should then appear in SYNC 3's Mobile App's Menu.
My Android phone is connected, my app(s) are running, I restarted them, but I still cannot find any apps.	There is a Bluetooth issue on some older versions of the Android operating system that may cause apps that were found on your previous vehicle drive to not be found again if you did not switch Bluetooth off.	Switch Bluetooth off and then on to reset it on your phone. If you are in your vehicle, SYNC 3 should be able to automatically re-connect to your phone if you press the "Phone" button.

AppLink issues		
Issue	**Possible cause(s)**	**Possible solution(s)**
My iPhone is connected, my app is running, I restarted the app but I still cannot find it on SYNC 3.	You may need to reset the USB connection to SYNC 3.	Unplug the USB cable from the phone, wait a moment, and plug the USB cable back in to the phone. After a few seconds, the app should appear in SYNC 3's Mobile Apps Menu. If not, "Force Close" the application and restart it.
I have an Android phone. I found and started my media app on SYNC 3, but there is no sound or the sound is very low.	The Bluetooth volume on the phone may be low.	Increase the Bluetooth volume of the device by using the device's volume control buttons which are most often found on the side of the device.
I can only see some of the AppLink apps running on my phone listed in the SYNC 3 Mobile Apps Menu.	Some Android devices have a limited number of Bluetooth ports that apps can use to connect. If you have more AppLink apps on your phone than the number of available Bluetooth ports, you will not see all of your apps listed in the SYNC 3 mobile apps menu.	Force close or uninstall the apps you do not want SYNC 3 to find. If the app has a "Ford SYNC" setting, disable that setting in the app's settings menu on the phone.

Voice command issues		
Issue	**Possible cause**	**Possible solution**
SYNC 3 does not understand what I am saying.	You may be using the wrong voice commands.	Review the cell phone voice commands and the media voice commands at the beginning of their respective sections.
		Refer to the audio display during an active voice session to find a list of voice commands there.
	You may be speaking too soon or at the wrong time.	Wait for the system to prompt you before you state your command.

Voice command issues		
Issue	**Possible cause**	**Possible solution**
SYNC 3 does not understand the name of a song or artist.	You may be using the wrong voice commands.	Review the media voice commands at the beginning of the media section.
	You may not be saying the name exactly as it appears on your device.	Say the song or artist name exactly as it is displayed on your device. For example, say "Play Artist Prince" or "Play song Purple Rain".
		Make sure you are saying the complete title such as "California remix featuring Jennifer Nettles".
		If there are any abbreviations in the name, like ESPN or CNN, you have to spell those: "E-S-P-N" or "C-N-N".
	The song or artist name may have some special characters that are not being recognized by SYNC 3.	Make sure that song titles, artists, album, and playlists names do not have any special characters like *, - or +.
SYNC 3 does not understand or is calling the wrong contact when I want to make a call.	You may not be saying the name exactly as it appears on your phonebook.	Make sure that you are saying the name exactly as it appears on your phone. For example, if your contact is "Joe Wilson", say "Call Joe Wilson". If your contact name is "Mom", say "Call Mom".
	The contact name may contain special characters.	Make sure that your contact names do not have any special characters like *, - or +.
The SYNC 3 voice control system is having trouble recognizing foreign names stored on my cell phone.	You may not be saying the name exactly as it appears on your phonebook.	SYNC 3 applies the phonetic pronunciation rules of the selected language to the contact names stored on your cell phone.
		Helpful Hint: You can select your contact manually. Press **PHONE**. Select the option for phonebook and then contact name. Press the soft-key option to hear it. SYNC 3 will read the contact name to you, giving you some idea of the pronunciation it is expecting.

Voice command issues		
Issue	**Possible cause**	**Possible solution**
The SYNC 3 voice control system is having trouble recognizing foreign tracks, artists, albums, genres and playlist names from my media player or USB flash drive.	You may be saying the foreign names using the currently selected language for SYNC 3.	SYNC 3 applies the phonetic pronunciation rules of the selected language to the names stored on your media player or USB flash drive. It is able to make some exceptions for very popular artist names (for example, U2) such that you can always use the English pronunciation for these artists.
The system generates voice prompts and the pronunciation of some words may not be accurate for my language.	SYNC 3 uses text-to-speech voice prompt technology.	SYNC 3 uses a synthetically generated voice rather than pre-recorded human voice.
		SYNC 3 offers several new voice control features for a wide range of languages. Dialing a contact name directly from the phonebook without pre-recording (for example, “call John Smith”) or selecting a track, artist, album, genre or playlist directly from your media player (for example, "play artist Madonna").

General		
Issue	**Possible cause**	**Possible solution**
The language selected for the instrument cluster and information and entertainment display does not match the SYNC 3 language (phone, USB, Bluetooth audio, voice control and voice prompts).	SYNC 3 does not support the currently selected language for the instrument cluster and information and entertainment display.	SYNC 3 only supports four languages in a single module for text display, voice control and voice prompts. The country where you bought your vehicle dictates the four languages based on the most popular languages spoken. If the selected language is not available, SYNC 3 remains in the current active language.
		SYNC 3 offers several new voice control features for a wide range of languages. Dialing a contact name directly from the phonebook without pre-recording (for example, “call John Smith”) or selecting a track, artist, album, genre or playlist directly from your media player (for example, "play artist Madonna").

SYNC 3 System Reset
The system has a System Reset feature that can be performed if the function of a SYNC 3 feature is lost. This reset is intended to restore functionality and will not erase any information previously stored in the system (such as paired devices, phonebook, call history, text messages, or user settings). To perform a System Reset, press and hold the Seek Up (>>) button while pressing and holding the Radio Power button. After approximately 5 seconds the screen will go black. Allow 1-2 minutes for the system reset to complete. You may then resume using the SYNC 3 system.

ELECTROMAGNETIC COMPATIBILITY

WARNINGS

The radio frequency transmitter equipment, for example cellular telephones and amateur radio transmitters, may only be fitted to your vehicle if they keep to the parameters shown in the table below. There are no special provisions or conditions for installations or use.

Do not place objects or mount equipment on or near the airbag cover, on the side of the seatbacks (of the front seats), or in front seat areas that may come into contact with a deploying airbag. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of personal injury in the event of a crash.

Do not fasten antenna cables to original vehicle wiring, fuel pipes and brake pipes.

Keep antenna and power cables at least 10 cm from any electronic modules and airbags.

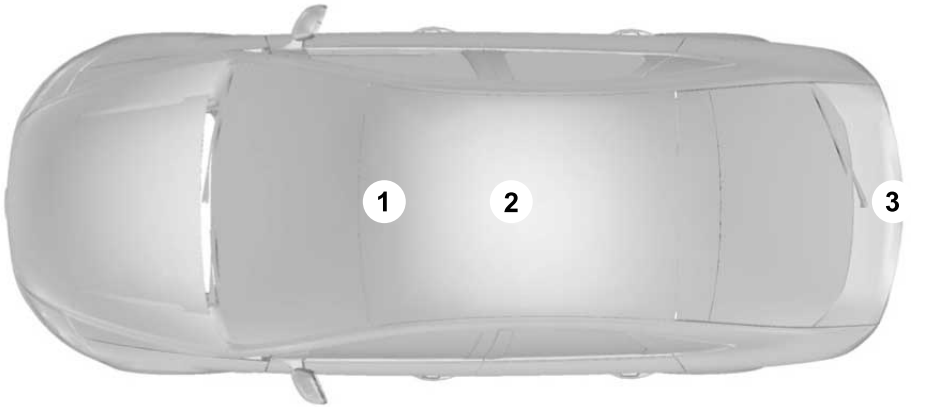
Note: *Your vehicle is tested and certified to legislations relating to electromagnetic compatibility (72/245/EEC, UN ECE Regulation 10 or other applicable local requirements). It is your responsibility to make sure that any equipment you added complies with applicable local legislations. Have any equipment that you add checked by an authorized dealer.*

Note: *After the installation of radio frequency transmitters, check for disturbances from and to all electrical equipment in your vehicle, both in the standby and transmit modes.*

Check all electrical equipment:

- with the ignition ON
- with the engine running
- during a road test at various speeds.

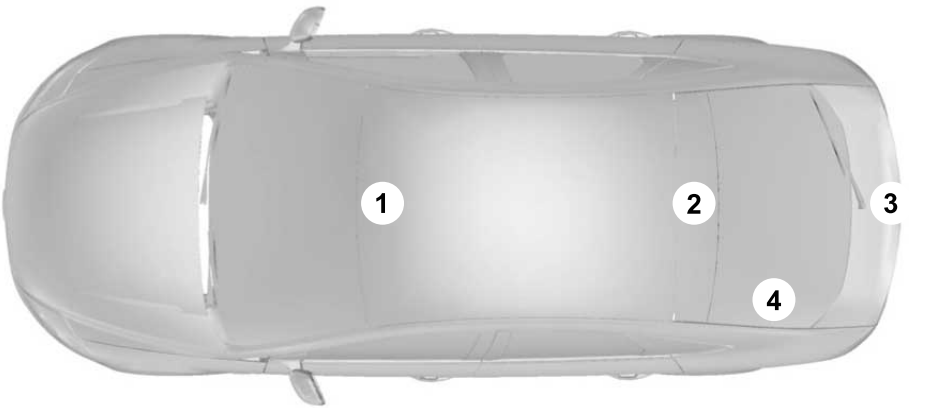
Check that electromagnetic fields generated inside your vehicle cabin by the transmitter installed do not exceed applicable human exposure requirements.



E229441

Frequency Band MHz	Maximum output power Watt (Peak RMS)	Antenna Positions
1 – 30	50 W	3
52 – 54	50 W	2
70 – 85	50 W	2
144 – 170	50 W	2
380 – 470	50 W	2
806 – 940	10 W	2
1200 – 1400	10 W	2
1710 – 1880	10 W	2
1885 – 2025	10 W	2

Convertible



E229442

Frequency Band MHz	Maximum output power Watt (Peak RMS)	Antenna Positions
1 – 30	50 W	3
52 – 54	50 W	4
70 – 85	50 W	4
144 – 170	50 W	4
380 – 470	50 W	4
806 – 940	10 W	4
1200 – 1400	10 W	4
1710 – 1880	10 W	4
1885 – 2025	10 W	4

END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT

VEHICLE SOFTWARE END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT (EULA)

- You (“You” or “Your” as applicable) have acquired a vehicle having several devices, including SYNC ® and various control modules, ("DEVICES") that include software licensed or owned by Ford Motor Company and its affiliates ("FORD MOTOR COMPANY"). Those software products of FORD MOTOR COMPANY origin, as well as associated media, printed materials, and "online" or electronic documentation ("SOFTWARE") are protected by international intellectual property laws and treaties. The SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold. All rights reserved.
- The SOFTWARE may interface with and/or communicate with, or may be later upgraded to interface with and/or communicate with additional software and/or systems provided by FORD MOTOR COMPANY.

IF YOU DO NOT AGREE TO THIS END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT ("EULA") DO NOT USE THE DEVICES OR COPY THE SOFTWARE. ANY USE OF THE SOFTWARE, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO USE ON THE DEVICES, WILL CONSTITUTE YOUR AGREEMENT TO THIS EULA (OR RATIFICATION OF ANY PREVIOUS CONSENT).

GRANT OF SOFTWARE LICENSE: This EULA grants you the following license:

- You may use the SOFTWARE as installed on the DEVICES and as otherwise interfacing with systems and/or services provide by or through FORD MOTOR COMPANY or its third party software and service providers.

Description of Other Rights and Limitations

- **Speech Recognition:** If the SOFTWARE includes speech recognition component(s), you should understand that speech recognition is an inherently statistical process and that recognition errors are inherent in the process. Neither FORD MOTOR COMPANY nor its suppliers shall be liable for any damages arising out of errors in the speech recognition process. It is your responsibility to monitor any speech recognition functions included in the system.
- **Limitations on Reverse Engineering, Decompilation and Disassembly:** You may not reverse engineer, decompile, translate, disassemble or attempt to discover any source code or underlying ideas or algorithms of the SOFTWARE nor permit others to reverse engineer, decompile or disassemble the SOFTWARE, except and only to the extent that such activity is expressly permitted by applicable law notwithstanding this limitation or to the extent as may be permitted by the licensing terms governing use of any open source components included with the SOFTWARE.
- **Limitations on Distributing, Copying, Modifying and Creating Derivative Works:** You may not distribute, copy, make modifications to or create derivative works based on the SOFTWARE, except and only to the extent that such activity is expressly permitted by applicable law notwithstanding this limitation or to the extent as may be permitted by the licensing terms governing use of any open source components included with the SOFTWARE.

- **Single EULA:** The end user documentation for the DEVICES and related systems and services may contain multiple EULAs, such as multiple translations and/or multiple media versions (e.g., in the user documentation and in the software). Even if you receive multiple EULAs, you are licensed to use only one (1) copy of the SOFTWARE.
- **SOFTWARE Transfer:** You may permanently transfer your rights under this EULA only as part of a sale or transfer of the DEVICES, provided you retain no copies, you transfer all of the SOFTWARE (including all component parts, the media and printed materials, any upgrades, and, if applicable, the Certificate(s) of Authenticity), and the recipient agrees to the terms of this EULA. If the SOFTWARE is an upgrade, any transfer must include all prior versions of the SOFTWARE.
- **Termination:** Without prejudice to any other rights, FORD MOTOR COMPANY may terminate this EULA if you fail to comply with the terms and conditions of this EULA.
- **Internet-Based Services Components:** The SOFTWARE may contain components that enable and facilitate the use of certain Internet-based services. You acknowledge and agree that FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and service suppliers, its affiliates and/or its designated agent may automatically check the version of the SOFTWARE and/or its components that you are utilizing and may provide upgrades or supplements to the SOFTWARE that may be automatically downloaded to your DEVICES.
- **Additional Software/Services:** The SOFTWARE may permit FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and service suppliers, its affiliates and/or its designated agent to provide or make available to you SOFTWARE updates, supplements, add-on components, or Internet-based services components of the SOFTWARE after the date you obtain your initial copy of the SOFTWARE ("Supplemental Components".) SOFTWARE updates may cause you to incur additional charges from your wireless service provider. If FORD MOTOR COMPANY or third party software and services suppliers provide or make available to you Supplemental Components and no other EULA terms are provided along with the Supplemental Components, then the terms of this EULA shall apply. FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates and/or its designated agent reserve the right to discontinue without liability any Internet-based services provided to you or made available to you through the use of the SOFTWARE.

- **Links to Third Party Sites:** The SOFTWARE may provide you with the ability to link to third party sites. The third party sites are not under the control of FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates and/or its designated agent. Neither FORD MOTOR COMPANY nor its affiliates nor its designated agent are responsible for (I) the contents of any third party sites, any links contained in third party sites, or any changes or updates to third party sites, or (ii) webcasting or any other form of transmission received from any third party sites. If the SOFTWARE provides links to third party sites, those links are provided to you only as a convenience, and the inclusion of any link does not imply an endorsement of the third party site by FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates and/or its designated agent.
- **Obligation to Drive Responsibly:** You recognize your obligation to drive responsibly and keep attention on the road. You will read and abide with the DEVICES operating instructions particularly as they pertain to safety and you agree to assume any risk associated with the use of the DEVICES.

UPGRADES AND RECOVERY MEDIA: If the SOFTWARE is provided by FORD MOTOR COMPANY separate from the DEVICES on media such as a ROM chip, CD ROM disk(s) or via web download or other means, and is labeled "For Upgrade Purposes Only" or "For Recovery Purposes Only" you may install one (1) copy of such SOFTWARE onto the DEVICES as a replacement copy for the existing SOFTWARE, and use it in accordance with this EULA, including any additional EULA terms accompanying the upgrade SOFTWARE.

INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY RIGHTS: All title and intellectual property rights in and to the SOFTWARE (including but not limited to any images, photographs, animations, video, audio, music, text and "applets" incorporated into the SOFTWARE), the accompanying printed materials, and any copies of the SOFTWARE, are owned by FORD MOTOR COMPANY, or its affiliates or suppliers. The SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold. You may not copy the printed materials accompanying the SOFTWARE. All title and intellectual property rights in and to the content which may be accessed through use of the SOFTWARE is the property of the respective content owner and may be protected by applicable copyright or other intellectual property laws and treaties. This EULA grants you no rights to use such content outside its intended use. All rights not specifically granted under this EULA are reserved by FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates, and third party software and service providers and suppliers. Use of any on-line services which may be accessed through the SOFTWARE may be governed by the respective terms of use relating to such services. If this SOFTWARE contains documentation that is provided only in electronic form, you may print one copy of such electronic documentation.

EXPORT RESTRICTIONS: You acknowledge that the SOFTWARE is subject to U.S. and European Union export jurisdiction. You agree to comply with all applicable international and national laws that apply to the SOFTWARE, including the U.S. Export Administration Regulations, as well as end-user, end-use and destination restrictions issued by U.S. and other governments.

TRADEMARKS: This EULA does not grant you any rights in connection with any trademarks or service marks of FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates, and third party software and service providers.

PRODUCT SUPPORT: Please refer to FORD MOTOR COMPANY instructions provided in the documentation for the DEVICES product support, such as the vehicle owner guide.

Should you have any questions concerning this EULA, or if you desire to contact FORD MOTOR COMPANY for any other reason, please refer to the address provided in the documentation for the DEVICES.

No Liability for Certain Damages: EXCEPT AS PROHIBITED BY LAW, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, ANY THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE OR SERVICES SUPPLIERS, AND THEIR AFFILIATES SHALL HAVE NO LIABILITY FOR ANY INDIRECT, SPECIAL, CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES ARISING FROM OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE USE OR PERFORMANCE OF THE SOFTWARE. THIS LIMITATION SHALL APPLY EVEN IF ANY REMEDY FAILS OF ITS ESSENTIAL PURPOSE. THERE ARE NO WARRANTIES OTHER THAN THOSE THAT MAY BE EXPRESSLY PROVIDED FOR YOUR NEW VEHICLE.

SYNC® Automotive Important Safety Information Read and follow instructions:

- Before using your SYNC® system, read and follow all instructions and safety information provided in this end user manual ("Owner Guide".) Not following precautions found in the Owner Guide can lead to an accident or other serious injuries.

General Operation

- **Voice Command Control**: Certain functions within the SYNC® system may be accomplished using voice commands. Using voice commands while driving helps you to operate the system without removing your hands from the wheel or eyes from the road.
- **Prolonged Views of Screen:** Do not access any function requiring a prolonged view of the screen while you are driving. Pull over in a safe and legal manner before attempting to access a function of the system requiring prolonged attention.
- **Volume Setting:** Do not raise the volume excessively. Keep the volume at a level where you can still hear outside traffic and emergency signals while driving. Driving while unable to hear these sounds could cause an accident.
- **Navigation Features:** Any navigation features included in the system are intended to provide turn by turn instructions to get you to a desired destination. Please make certain all persons using this system carefully read and follow instructions and safety information fully.
- **Distraction Hazard:** Any navigation features may require manual (non-verbal) setup. Attempting to perform such set-up or insert data while driving can distract your attention and could cause an accident or other serious injury. Stop the vehicle in a safe and legal manner before attempting these operations.
- **Let Your Judgment Prevail:** Any navigation features are provided only as an aid. Make your driving decisions based on your observations of local conditions and existing traffic regulations. Any such feature is not a

substitute for your personal judgment. Any route suggestions made by this system should never replace any local traffic regulations or your personal judgment or knowledge of safe driving practices.

- **Route Safety:** Do not follow the route suggestions if doing so would result in an unsafe or illegal maneuver, if you would be placed in an unsafe situation, or if you would be directed into an area that you consider unsafe. The driver is ultimately responsible for the safe operation of the vehicle and therefore, must evaluate whether it is safe to follow the suggested directions.
- **Potential Map Inaccuracy:** Maps used by this system may be inaccurate because of changes in roads, traffic controls or driving conditions. Always use good judgment and common sense when following the suggested routes.
- **Emergency Services:** Do not rely on any navigation features included in the system to route you to emergency services. Ask local authorities or an emergency services operator for these locations. Not all emergency services such as police, fire stations, hospitals and clinics are likely to be contained in the map database for such navigation features.

Your Responsibilities and Assumptions of Risk

- You agree to each of the following:(a) Any use of the SOFTWARE while driving an automobile or other vehicle in violation of applicable law or otherwise driving in an unsafe manner presents a significant risk of distracted driving and should not be attempted under any circumstances;(b) Use of the SOFTWARE at excessive volume poses a significant risk of hearing damage and should not be attempted under any circumstances;(c) The SOFTWARE may not be compatible with new or different versions of an operating system, third party software, or third party services, and the SOFTWARE may potentially cause a critical failure of an operating system, third party software, or third party service.(d) Any third party service accessed by or third party software used with the SOFTWARE (I) may charge an additional fee for access, (ii) may not work correctly, on an uninterrupted basis, or error free, (iii) may change streaming formats or discontinue operation, (iv) may contain adult, profane or offensive content; and (v) may contain inaccurate, false or misleading traffic, weather, financial or safety information or other content; and (e) Use of the SOFTWARE may cause you to incur additional charges from your wireless service provider (WSP) and any data or minute calculators that may be included in the software program are for reference only, are not warranted in any way and should not be relied upon in anyway.
- When using the SOFTWARE, you agree to be responsible for and assume the entire risk to the items set forth in Section (a) – (e) above.

Disclaimer of Warranty

YOU EXPRESSLY ACKNOWLEDGE AND AGREE THAT USE OF THE DEVICES AND SOFTWARE IS AT YOUR SOLE RISK AND THAT THE ENTIRE RISK AS TO SATISFACTORY QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, COMPATIBILITY, ACCURACY AND EFFORT IS WITH YOU. TO THE MAXIMUM EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, THE SOFTWARE AND ANY THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES ARE PROVIDED "AS IS" AND “AS AVAILABLE”, WITH ALL FAULTS AND WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, AND FORD MOTOR COMPANY HEREBY DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES AND CONDITIONS WITH RESPECT TO THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, AND THIRD-PARTY SERVICES, EITHER EXPRESS, IMPLIED OR STATUTORY, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES AND/OR CONDITIONS OF MERCHANTABILITY, OF SATISFACTORY QUALITY, OF FITNESS FOR AN ARTICULAR PURPOSE, OF ACCURACY, OF QUIET ENJOYMENT, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT OF THIRD-PARTY RIGHTS. FORD MOTOR COMPANY DOES NOT WARRANT (a) AGAINST INTERFERENCE WITH YOUR ENJOYMENT OF THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES, (b) THAT THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES WILL MEET YOUR REQUIREMENTS, (c) THAT THE OPERATION OF THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES WILL BE UNINTERRUPTED OR ERROR-FREE, (d) OR THAT DEFECTS IN THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES WILL BE CORRECTED. NO ORAL OR WRITTEN INFORMATION OR ADVICE GIVEN BY FORD MOTOR COMPANY OR ITS AUTHORIZED REPRESENTATIVE SHALL CREATE A WARRANTY. SHOULD THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES PROVE DEFECTIVE, YOU ASSUME THE ENTIRE COST OF ALL NECESSARY SERVICING, REPAIR OR CORRECTION. SOME JURISDICTIONS DO NOT ALLOW THE DISCLAIMER OF IMPLIED WARRANTIES OR LIMITATIONS ON APPLICABLE STATUTORY RIGHTS OF A CONSUMER, SO THE ABOVE DISCLAIMER MAY NOT FULLY APPLY TO YOU. THE SOLE WARRANTY PROVIDED BY FORD MOTOR COMPANY SHALL BE FOUND IN THE WARRANTY INFORMATION INCLUDING WITH YOUR OWNER GUIDE. TO THE EXTENT THAT THERE IS ANY CONFLICT BETWEEN THE TERMS OF THIS SECTION AND THE WARRANTY BOOKLET, THE WARRANTY BOOKLET SHALL CONTROL.

Applicable Law, Venue, Jurisdiction

- The laws of the State of Michigan govern this EULA and Your use of the SOFTWARE. Your use of the SOFTWARE may also be subject to other local, state, national, or international laws. Any litigation arising out of or related to this EULA shall be brought and maintained exclusively in a court of the State of Michigan located in Wayne County or in the United States District Court for the Eastern District of Michigan. You hereby consent to submit to the personal jurisdiction of a court in the State of Michigan located in Wayne County and the United States District Court for the Eastern District of Michigan for any dispute arising out of or relating to this EULA.

Binding Arbitration and Class Action Waiver

(a) Application. This Section applies to any dispute EXCEPT IT DOES NOT INCLUDE A DISPUTE RELATING TO COPYRIGHT INFRINGEMENT, OR TO THE ENFORCEMENT OR VALIDITY OF YOUR, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, OR ANY OF FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S LICENSORS' INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY RIGHTS. Dispute means any dispute, action, or other controversy between You and FORD MOTOR COMPANY, other than the exceptions listed above, concerning the SOFTWARE (including its price) or this EULA, whether in contract, warranty, tort, statute, regulation, ordinance, or any other legal or equitable basis.

(b) Notice of Dispute. In the event of a Dispute, You or FORD MOTOR COMPANY must give the other a "Notice of Dispute", which is a written statement of the name, address, and contact information of the party giving it, the facts giving rise to the dispute, and the relief requested. You and FORD MOTOR COMPANY will attempt to resolve any dispute through informal negotiation within 60 days from the date the Notice of Dispute is sent. After 60 days, You or FORD MOTOR COMPANY may commence arbitration.

(c) Small claims court. You may also litigate any dispute in small claims court in your county of residence or FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S principal place of business, if the dispute meets all requirements to be heard in the small claims court. You may litigate in small claims court whether or not You negotiated informally first.

(d) Binding arbitration. If You and FORD MOTOR COMPANY, do not resolve any dispute by informal negotiation or in small claims court, any other effort to resolve the dispute will be conducted exclusively by binding arbitration. You are giving up the right to litigate (or participate in as a party or class member) all disputes in court before a judge or jury. Instead, all disputes will be resolved before a neutral arbitrator, whose decision will be final except for a limited right of appeal under the Federal Arbitration Act. Any court with jurisdiction over the parties may enforce the arbitrator's award.

(e) Class action waiver. Any proceedings to resolve or litigate any dispute in any forum will be conducted solely on an individual basis. Neither you nor FORD MOTOR COMPANY, will seek to have any dispute heard as a class action, as a private attorney general action, or in any other proceeding in which any party acts or proposes to act in a representative capacity. No arbitration or proceeding will be combined with another without the prior written consent of all parties to all affected arbitrations or proceedings.

(f) Arbitration procedure. Any arbitration will be conducted by the American Arbitration Association (the "AAA"), under its Commercial Arbitration Rules. If You are an individual and use the SOFTWARE for personal or vehicle use, or if the value of the dispute is $75,000 or less whether or not You are an individual or how You use the SOFTWARE, the AAA Supplementary Procedures for Consumer-Related Disputes will also apply. To commence arbitration, submit a Commercial Arbitration Rules Demand for Arbitration form to the AAA. You may request a telephonic or in-person hearing by following the AAA rules. In a dispute involving $10,000 or less, any hearing will be telephonic unless the arbitrator finds good cause to hold an in-person hearing instead. For more information, see adr.org or call 1-800-778-7879. You agree to commence arbitration only in your county of residence or FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S principal place of business. The arbitrator

may award the same damages to You individually as a court could. The arbitrator may award declaratory or injunctive relief only to You individually, and only to the extent required to satisfy Your individual claim.

(g) Arbitration fees and incentives.

- I. Disputes involving $75,000 or less. FORD MOTOR COMPANY will promptly reimburse your filing fees and pay the AAA's and arbitrator's fees and expenses. If you reject FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S last written settlement offer made before the arbitrator was appointed ("last written offer"), your dispute goes all the way to an arbitrator's decision (called an "award"), and the arbitrator awards you more than the last written offer, FORD MOTOR COMPANY will give you three incentives: (1) pay the greater of the award or $1,000; (2) pay twice your reasonable attorney's fees, if any; and (3) reimburse any expenses (including expert witness fees and costs) that your attorney reasonably accrues for investigating, preparing, and pursuing your claim in arbitration. The arbitrator will determine the amounts.
- ii. Disputes involving more than $75,000. The AAA rules will govern payment of filing fees and the AAA's and arbitrator's fees and expenses.
- iii. Disputes involving any amount. In any arbitration you commence, FORD MOTOR COMPANY will seek its AAA or arbitrator's fees and expenses, or Your filing fees it reimbursed, only if the arbitrator finds the arbitration frivolous or brought for an improper purpose. In any arbitration FORD MOTOR COMPANY commences, it will pay all filing, AAA, and arbitrator's fees and expenses. It will not seek its attorney's fees or expenses from you in any arbitration. Fees and expenses are not counted in determining how much a dispute involves.

(h) Claims or disputes must be filed within one year. To the extent permitted by law, any claim or dispute under this EULA to which this Section applies must be filed within one year in small claims court (Section c) or in arbitration (Section d). The one-year period begins when the claim or dispute first could be filed. If such a claim or dispute is not filed within one year, it is permanently barred.

(I) Severability. If the class action waiver (Section e) is found to be illegal or unenforceable as to all or some parts of a dispute, then that portion of Section e will not apply to those parts. Instead, those parts will be severed and proceed in a court of law, with the remaining parts proceeding in arbitration. If any other provision of that portion Section e is found to be illegal or unenforceable, that provision will be severed with the remainder of Section e remaining in full force and effect.

Telenav Software End User License Agreement

Please read these terms and conditions carefully before you use the TeleNav Software. Your use of the TeleNav Software indicates that you accept these terms and conditions. If you do not accept these terms and conditions, do not break the seal of the package, launch, or otherwise use the TeleNav Software. TeleNav may revise this Agreement and the privacy policy at any time, with or without notice to you. You agree to visit http://www.telenav.com from time to time to review the then current version of this Agreement and of the privacy policy.

1. Safe and Lawful Use

You acknowledge that devoting attention to the TeleNav Software may pose a risk of injury or death to you and others in situations that otherwise require your undivided attention, and you therefore agree to comply with the following when using the TeleNav Software:

(a) observe all traffic laws and otherwise drive safely;

(b) use your own personal judgment while driving. If you feel that a route suggested by the TeleNav Software instructs you to perform an unsafe or illegal maneuver, places you in an unsafe situation, or directs you into an area that you consider to be unsafe, do not follow such instructions;

(c) do not input destinations, or otherwise manipulate the TeleNav Software, unless your vehicle is stationary and parked;

(d) do not use the TeleNav Software for any illegal, unauthorized, unintended, unsafe, hazardous, or unlawful purposes, or in any manner inconsistent with this Agreement;

(e) arrange all GPS and wireless devices and cables necessary for use of the TeleNav Software in a secure manner in your vehicle so that they will not interfere with your driving and will not prevent the operation of any safety device (such as an airbag).

You agree to indemnify and hold TeleNav harmless against all claims resulting from any dangerous or otherwise inappropriate use of the TeleNav Software in any moving vehicle, including as a result of your failure to comply with the directions above.

2. Account Information

You agree: (a) when registering the TeleNav Software, to provide TeleNav with true, accurate, current, and complete information about yourself, and (b) to inform TeleNav promptly of any changes to such information, and to keep it true, accurate, current and complete.

3. Software License

- Subject to your compliance with the terms of this Agreement, TeleNav hereby grants to you a personal, non-exclusive, non-transferable license (except as expressly permitted below in connection with your permanent transfer of the TeleNav Software license), without the right to sublicense, to use the TeleNav Software (in object code form only) in order to access and use the TeleNav Software. This license shall terminate upon any termination or expiration of this Agreement. You agree that you will use the TeleNav Software only for your personal business or leisure purposes, and not to provide commercial navigation services to other parties.

3.1 License Limitations

- **(a)** reverse engineer, decompile, disassemble, translate, modify, alter or otherwise change the TeleNav Software or any part thereof; **(b)** attempt to derive the source code, audio library or structure of the TeleNav Software without the prior express written consent of TeleNav; **(c)** remove from the TeleNav Software, or alter, any of TeleNav's or its suppliers' trademarks, trade names, logos, patent or copyright notices, or other notices or markings; **(d)**

distribute, sublicense or otherwise transfer the TeleNav Software to others, except as part of your permanent transfer of the TeleNav Software; or **(e)** use the TeleNav Software in any manner that

I. infringes the intellectual property or proprietary rights, rights of publicity or privacy or other rights of any party,

ii. violates any law, statute, ordinance or regulation, including but not limited to laws and regulations related to spamming, privacy, consumer and child protection, obscenity or defamation, or

iii. is harmful, threatening, abusive, harassing, tortuous, defamatory, vulgar, obscene, libelous, or otherwise objectionable; and (f) lease, rent out, or otherwise permit unauthorized access by third parties to the TeleNav Software without advanced written permission of TeleNav.

4. Disclaimers

- To the fullest extent permissible pursuant to applicable law, in no event will TeleNav, its licensors and suppliers, or agents or employees of any of the foregoing, be liable for any decision made or action taken by you or anyone else in reliance on the information provided by the TeleNav Software. TeleNav also does not warrant the accuracy of the map or other data used for the TeleNav Software. Such data may not always reflect reality due to, among other things, road closures, construction, weather, new roads and other changing conditions. You are responsible for the entire risk arising out of your use of the TeleNav Software. For example but without limitation, you agree not to rely on the TeleNav Software for critical navigation in areas where the well-being or survival of you or others is dependent on the accuracy of navigation, as the maps or functionality of the TeleNav Software are not intended to support such high risk applications, especially in more remote geographical areas.
- TELENAV EXPRESSLY DISCLAIMS AND EXCLUDES ALL WARRANTIES IN CONNECTION WITH THE TELENAV SOFTWARE, WHETHER STATUTORY, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING ALL WARRANTIES WHICH MAY ARISE FROM COURSE OF DEALING, CUSTOM OR TRADE AND INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NON-INFRINGEMENT OF THIRD PARTY RIGHTS WITH RESPECT TO THE TELENAV SOFTWARE.
- Certain jurisdictions do not permit the disclaimer of certain warranties, so this limitation may not apply to you.

5. Limitation of Liability

- TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED UNDER APPLICABLE LAW, UNDER NO CIRCUMSTANCES SHALL TELENAV OR ITS LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS BE LIABLE TO YOU OR TO ANY THIRD PARTY FOR ANY INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, CONSEQUENTIAL, SPECIAL OR EXEMPLARY DAMAGES (INCLUDING IN EACH CASE, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, DAMAGES FOR THE INABILITY TO USE THE EQUIPMENT OR ACCESS DATA, LOSS OF DATA, LOSS OF BUSINESS, LOSS OF PROFITS, BUSINESS INTERRUPTION OR THE LIKE) ARISING OUT OF THE USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THE TELENAV SOFTWARE, EVEN IF TELENAV HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. NOTWITHSTANDING ANY DAMAGES THAT YOU MIGHT INCUR FOR ANY

REASON WHATSOEVER (INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, ALL DAMAGES REFERENCED HEREIN AND ALL DIRECT OR GENERAL DAMAGES IN CONTRACT, TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE) OR OTHERWISE), THE ENTIRE LIABILITY OF TELENAV AND OF ALL OF TELENAV'S SUPPLIERS SHALL BE LIMITED TO THE AMOUNT ACTUALLY PAID BY YOU FOR THE TELENAV SOFTWARE. SOME STATES AND/OR JURISDICTIONS DO NOT ALLOW THE EXCLUSION OR LIMITATION OF INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES, SO THE ABOVE LIMITATIONS OR EXCLUSIONS MAY NOT APPLY TO YOU.

6. Arbitration and Governing Law

- You agree that any dispute, claim or controversy arising out of or relating to this Agreement or the TeleNav Software shall be settled by independent arbitration involving a neutral arbitrator and administered by the American Arbitration Association in the County of Santa Clara, California. The arbitrator shall apply the Commercial Arbitration Rules of the American Arbitration Association, and the judgment upon the award rendered by the arbitrator may be entered by any court having jurisdiction. Note that there is no judge or jury in an arbitration proceeding and the decision of the arbitrator shall be binding upon both parties. You expressly agree to waive your right to a jury trial. This Agreement and performance hereunder will be governed by and construed in accordance with the laws of the State of California, without giving effect to its conflict of law provisions. To the extent judicial action is necessary in connection with the binding arbitration, both TeleNav and you agree to submit to the exclusive jurisdiction of the courts of the County of Santa Clara, California. The United Nations Convention on Contracts for the International Sale of Goods shall not apply.

7. Assignment

- You may not resell, assign, or transfer this Agreement or any of your rights or obligations, except in totality, in connection with your permanent transfer of the TeleNav Software, and expressly conditioned upon the new user of the TeleNav Software agreeing to be bound by the terms and conditions of this Agreement. Any such sale, assignment or transfer that is not expressly permitted under this paragraph will result in immediate termination of this Agreement, without liability to TeleNav, in which case you and all other parties shall immediately cease all use of the TeleNav Software. Notwithstanding the foregoing, TeleNav may assign this Agreement to any other party at any time without notice, provided the assignee remains bound by this Agreement.

8. Miscellaneous

8.1

This Agreement constitutes the entire agreement between TeleNav and you with respect to the subject matter hereof.

8.2

Except for the limited licenses expressly granted in this Agreement, TeleNav retains all right, title and interest in and to the TeleNav Software, including without limitation all related intellectual property rights. No licenses or other rights which are not expressly granted in this Agreement are intended to, or shall be, granted or

conferred by implication, statute, inducement, estoppel or otherwise, and TeleNav and its suppliers and licensors hereby reserve all of their respective rights other than the licenses explicitly granted in this Agreement.

8.3

By using the TeleNav Software, you consent to receive from TeleNav all communications, including notices, agreements, legally required disclosures or other information in connection with the TeleNav Software (collectively, "Notices") electronically. TeleNav may provide such Notices by posting them on TeleNav's Website or by downloading such Notices to your wireless device. If you desire to withdraw your consent to receive Notices electronically, you must discontinue your use of the TeleNav Software.

8.4

TeleNav's or your failure to require performance of any provision shall not affect that party's right to require performance at any time thereafter, nor shall a waiver of any breach or default of this Agreement constitute a waiver of any subsequent breach or default or a waiver of the provision itself.

8.5

If any provision herein is held unenforceable, then such provision will be modified to reflect the intention of the parties, and the remaining provisions of this Agreement will remain in full force and effect.

8.6

The headings in this Agreement are for convenience of reference only, will not be deemed to be a part of this Agreement, and will not be referred to in connection with the construction or interpretation of this Agreement. As used in this Agreement, the words "include" and "including" and variations thereof, will not be deemed to be terms of limitation, but rather will be deemed to be followed by the words "without limitation".

9. Other Vendors Terms and Conditions

- The Telenav Software utilizes map and other data licensed to Telenav by third party vendors for the benefit of you and other end users. This Agreement includes end-user terms applicable to these companies (included at the end of this Agreement), and thus your use of the Telenav Software is also subject to such terms. You agree to comply with the following additional terms and conditions, which are applicable to Telenav's third party vendor licensors::

9.1 End User Terms Required by HERE North America, LLC

The data ("Data") is provided for your personal, internal use only and not for resale. It is protected by copyright, and is subject to the following terms and conditions which are agreed to by you, on the one hand, and Telenav ("Telenav") and its licensors (including their licensors and suppliers) on the other hand.

© 2013 HERE. All rights reserved.

The Data for areas of Canada includes information taken with permission from Canadian authorities, including: © Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada, © Queen's Printer for Ontario, © Canada Post Corporation, GeoBase®, © Department of Natural Resources Canada.

HERE holds a non-exclusive license from the United States Postal Service® to publish and sell ZIP+4® information.

©United States Postal Service® 2014. Prices are not established, controlled or approved by the United States Postal Service®. The following trademarks and registrations are owned by the USPS: United States Postal Service, USPS, and ZIP+4

The Data for Mexico includes certain data from Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía.

9.2 End User Terms Required by NAV2 (Shanghai) Co., Ltd

The data ("Data") is provided for your personal, internal use only and not for resale. It is protected by copyright, and is subject to the following terms and conditions which are agreed to by you, on the one hand, and NAV2 (Shanghai) Co., Ltd ("NAV2") and its licensors (including their licensors and suppliers) on the other hand. 20xx. All rights reserved

Terms and Conditions

Permitted Use. You agree to use this Data together with the Telenav Software solely for the internal business and personal purposes for which you were licensed, and not for service bureau, time-sharing or other similar purposes. Accordingly, but subject to the restrictions set forth in the following paragraphs, you agree not to otherwise reproduce, copy, modify, decompile, disassemble, create any derivative works of, or reverse engineer any portion of this Data, and may not transfer or distribute it in any form, for any purpose, except to the extent permitted by mandatory laws.

Restrictions. Except where you have been specifically licensed to do so by Telenav, and without limiting the preceding paragraph, you may not use this Data (a) with any products, systems, or applications installed or otherwise connected to or in communication with vehicles, capable of vehicle navigation, positioning, dispatch, real time route guidance, fleet management or similar applications; or (b) with or in communication with any positioning devices or any mobile or wireless-connected electronic or computer devices, including without limitation cellular phones, palmtop and handheld computers, pagers, and personal digital assistants or PDAs.

Warning. The Data may contain inaccurate or incomplete information due to the passage of time, changing circumstances, sources used and the nature of collecting comprehensive geographic data, any of which may lead to incorrect results.

No Warranty. This Data is provided to you "as is," and you agree to use it at your own risk. Telenav and its licensors (and their licensors and suppliers) make no guarantees, representations or warranties of any kind, express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, content, quality, accuracy, completeness, effectiveness, reliability, fitness for a particular purpose, usefulness, use or results to be obtained from this Data, or that the Data or server will be uninterrupted or error-free.

Disclaimer of Warranty: TELENAV AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) DISCLAIM ANY WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, OF QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A

PARTICULAR PURPOSE OR NON-INFRINGEMENT. Some States, Territories and Countries do not allow certain warranty exclusions, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

Disclaimer of Liability: TELENAV AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) SHALL NOT BE LIABLE TO YOU: IN RESPECT OF ANY CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION, IRRESPECTIVE OF THE NATURE OF THE CAUSE OF THE CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION ALLEGING ANY LOSS, INJURY OR DAMAGES, DIRECT OR INDIRECT, WHICH MAY RESULT FROM THE USE OR POSSESSION OF THE INFORMATION; OR FOR ANY LOSS OF PROFIT, REVENUE, CONTRACTS OR SAVINGS, OR ANY OTHER DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THIS INFORMATION, ANY DEFECT IN THE INFORMATION, OR THE BREACH OF THESE TERMS OR CONDITIONS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION IN CONTRACT OR TORT OR BASED ON A WARRANTY, EVEN IF TELENAV OR ITS LICENSORS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. Some States, Territories and Countries do not allow certain liability exclusions or damages limitations, so to that extent the above may not apply to you.

Export Control. You shall not export from anywhere any part of the Data or any direct product thereof except in compliance with, and with all licenses and approvals required under, applicable export laws, rules and regulations, including but not limited to the laws, rules and regulations administered by the Office of Foreign Assets Control of the U.S. Department of Commerce and the Bureau of Industry and Security of the U.S. Department of Commerce. To the extent that any such export laws, rules or regulations prohibit HERE from complying with any of its obligations hereunder to deliver or distribute Data, such failure shall be excused and shall not constitute a breach of this Agreement.

Entire Agreement. These terms and conditions constitute the entire agreement between Telenav (and its licensors, including their licensors and suppliers) and you pertaining to the subject matter hereof, and supersedes in their entirety any and all written or oral agreements previously existing between us with respect to such subject matter.

Governing Law. The above terms and conditions shall be governed by the laws of the State of Illinois [insert “Netherlands” where European HERE Data is used], without giving effect to (i) its conflict of laws provisions, or (ii) the United Nations Convention for Contracts for the International Sale of Goods, which is explicitly excluded. You agree to submit to the jurisdiction of the State of Illinois [insert “The Netherlands” where European HERE Data is used] for any and all disputes, claims and actions arising from or in connection with the Data provided to you hereunder.

Government End Users. If the Data is being acquired by or on behalf of the United States government or any other entity seeking or applying rights similar to those customarily claimed by the United States government, this Data is a “commercial item” as that term is defined at 48 C.F.R. (“FAR”) 2.101, is licensed in accordance with these End-User Terms, and each copy of Data delivered or otherwise furnished shall be marked and embedded as appropriate with the following “Notice of Use,” and shall be treated in accordance with such Notice:

NOTICE OF USE
CONTRACTOR (MANUFACTURER/ SUPPLIER) NAME: HERE
CONTRACTOR (MANUFACTURER/ SUPPLIER) ADDRESS: c/o Nokia, 425 West Randolph Street, Chicago, Illinois 60606
This Data is a commercial item as defined in FAR 2.101 and is subject to these End-User Terms under which this Data was provided.
© 1987 – 2014 HERE – All rights reserved.

If the Contracting Officer, federal government agency, or any federal official refuses to use the legend provided herein, the Contracting Officer, federal government agency, or any federal official must notify HERE prior to seeking additional or alternative rights in the Data.

I. US/Canada Territory

A. United States Data. The End-User Terms for any Application containing Data for the United States shall contain the following notices:

"HERE holds a non-exclusive license from the United States Postal Service® to publish and sell ZIP+4® information."

"©United States Postal Service® 20XX. Prices are not established, controlled or approved by the United States Postal Service®. The following trademarks and registrations are owned by the USPS: United States Postal Service, USPS, and ZIP+4."

B. Canada Data. The following provisions apply to the Data for Canada, which may include or reflect data from third party licensors ("Third Party Data"), including Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada ("Her Majesty"), Canada Post Corporation ("Canada Post") and the Department of Natural Resources of Canada ("NRCan"):

1. Disclaimer and Limitation: Client agrees that its use of the Third Party Data is subject to the following provisions:

a. Disclaimer: The Third Party Data is licensed on an "as is" basis. The licensors of such data, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, make no guarantees, representations or warranties respecting such data, either express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, effectiveness, completeness, accuracy or fitness for a particular purpose.

b. Limitation on Liability: The Third Party Data licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, shall not be liable: (i) in respect of any claim, demand or action, irrespective of the nature of the cause of the claim, demand or action alleging any loss, injury or damages, direct or indirect, which may result from the use or possession of such Data; or (ii) in any way for loss of revenues or contracts, or any other consequential loss of any kind resulting from any defect in the Data.

2. Copyright Notice: In connection with each copy of all or any portion of the Data for the Territory of Canada, Client shall affix in a conspicuous manner the following copyright notice on at least one of: (i) the label for the storage media of the copy; (ii) the packaging for the copy; or (iii) other materials packaged with the copy, such as user manuals or end user license agreements: "This data includes information taken with permission from Canadian authorities, including © Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada, © Queen's Printer for Ontario, © Canada Post Corporation, GeoBase®, © The Department of Natural Resources Canada. All rights reserved."

3. End-User Terms: Except as otherwise agreed by the parties, in connection with the provision of any portion of the Data for the Territory of Canada to End-Users as may be authorized under the Agreement, Client shall provide such End-Users, in a reasonably conspicuous manner, with terms (set forth with other end user terms required to be provided under the Agreement, or as otherwise may be provided, by Client) which shall include the following provisions on behalf of the Third Party Data licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan:

The Data may include or reflect data of licensors, including Her Majesty the Queen in the Right of Canada ("Her Majesty"), Canada Post Corporation ("Canada Post") and the Department of Natural Resources Canada ("NRCan"). Such data is licensed on an "as is" basis. The licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, make no guarantees, representations or warranties respecting such data, either express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, effectiveness, completeness, accuracy or fitness for a particular purpose. The licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, shall not be liable in respect of any claim, demand or action, irrespective of the nature of the cause of the claim, demand or action alleging any loss, injury or damages, direct or indirect, which may result from the use or possession of the data or the Data. The licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, shall not be liable in any way for loss of revenues or contracts, or any other consequential loss of any kind resulting from any defect in the data or the Data.
End User shall indemnify and save harmless the licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, and their officers, employees and agents from and against any claim, demand or action, irrespective of the nature of the cause of the claim, demand or action, alleging loss, costs, expenses, damages or injuries (including injuries resulting in death) arising out of the use or possession of the data or the Data.

4. Additional Provisions: The terms contained in this Section are in addition to all of the rights and obligations of the parties under the Agreement. To the extent that any of the provisions of this Section are inconsistent with, or conflict with, any other provisions of the Agreement, the provisions of this Section shall prevail.

II. Mexico. The following provision applies to the Data for Mexico, which includes certain data from the Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía ("INEGI"):

A. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging containing Data for Mexico shall contain the following notice: "Fuente: INEGI (Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía)"

III. Latin America Territory

A. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Territory	Notice
Ecuador	"INSTITUTO GEOGRAFICO MILITAR DEL ECUADOR AUTORIZACION Nº IGM-2011-01- PCO-01 DEL 25 DE ENERO DE 2011" "source: © IGN 2009 - BD TOPO ®"
Guadeloupe, French Guiana and Martinique Mexico	"Fuente: INEGI (Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía)"

IV. Middle East Territory

A. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Country	Notice
Jordan	"© Royal Jordanian Geographic Centre". The foregoing notice requirement for Jordan Data is a material term of the Agreement. If Client or any of its permitted sublicensees (if any) fail to meet such requirement, HERE shall have the right to terminate Client's license with respect to the Jordan Data.

B. Jordan Data. Client and its permitted sublicensees (if any) are restricted from licensing and/or otherwise distributing HERE's database for the country of Jordan ("Jordan Data") for use in Enterprise Applications to (i) non-Jordanian entities for use of the Jordan Data solely in Jordan or (ii) Jordan-based customers. In addition, Client, its permitted sublicensees (if any) and End-Users are restricted from using the Jordan Data in Enterprise Applications if such party is (i) a non-Jordanian entity using the Jordan Data solely in Jordan or (ii) a Jordan-based customer. For purposes of the foregoing, "Enterprise Applications" shall mean Geomarketing applications, GIS applications, mobile business asset management applications, call center applications, telematics applications, public organization Internet applications or for providing geocoding services.

V. Europe Territory

A. Use of Certain Traffic Codes in Europe

1. General Restrictions Applicable to Traffic Codes. Client acknowledges and agrees that in certain countries of the Europe Territory, Client will need to obtain rights directly from third party RDS-TMC code providers to receive and use the Traffic Codes in the Data and to deliver to End-Users Transactions in any way derived from or based on such Traffic Codes. For such countries, HERE shall deliver the Data incorporating Traffic Codes to Client only after receiving certification from Client of its having obtained such rights.

2. Display of Third Party Rights Legends for Belgium. Client shall, for each Transaction that uses Traffic Codes for Belgium, provide the following notice to the End-User: "Traffic Codes for Belgium are provided by the Ministerie van de Vlaamse Gemeenschap and the Ministèrie de l'Equipement et des Transports."

B. Paper Maps. With respect to any license granted to Client relating to making, selling or distributing paper maps (i.e., a map fixed on a paper or paper-like medium): (a) such license with respect to Data for the Territory of Great Britain is conditioned on Client's entering into and complying with a separate written agreement with the Ordnance Survey ("OS") to create and sell paper maps, Client's paying to the OS any and all applicable paper map royalties, and Client's complying with the OS copyright notice requirements; (b) such license for selling or otherwise distributing for charge with respect to Data for the Territory of Czech Republic is conditioned on Client's obtaining prior written consent from Kartografie a.s.; (c) such license for selling or distributing with respect to Data for the Territory of Switzerland is conditioned on Client's obtaining a permit from Bundesamt für Landestopografie of Switzerland; (d) Client is restricted from using Data for the Territory of France to create paper maps with a scale between 1:5,000 and 1:250,000; and (e) Client is restricted from using any Data to create, sell or distribute paper maps that are the same or substantially similar, in terms of data content and specific use of color, symbols and scale, to paper maps published by the European national mapping agencies, including without limitation, Landervermessungämter of Germany, Topografische Dienst of the Netherlands, Nationaal Geografisch Instituut of Belgium, Bundesamt für Landestopografie of Switzerland, Bundesamt für Eich-und Vermessungswesen of Austria, and the National Land Survey of Sweden.

C. OS Enforcement. Without limiting Section IV(B) above, with respect to Data for the Territory of Great Britain, Client acknowledges and agrees that the Ordnance Survey ("OS") may bring a direct action against Client to enforce compliance with the OS copyright notice (see Section IV(D) below) and paper map requirements (see Section IV(B) above) contained in this Agreement.

D. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Country(ies) Notice

Austria	"© Bundesamt für Eich- und Vermessungswesen"
Croatia Cyprus, Estonia, Latvia, Lithuania, Moldova, Poland, Slovenia and/or Ukraine	"© EuroGeographics"
France	"source: © IGN 2009 – BD TOPO ®"
Germany	"Die Grundlagendaten wurden mit Genehmigung der zuständigen Behörden entnommen"
Great Britain	"Contains Ordnance Survey data © Crown copyright and database right 2010 Contains Royal Mail data © Royal Mail copyright and database right 2010"
Greece	"Copyright Geomatics Ltd."
Hungary	"Copyright © 2003; Top-Map Ltd."
Italy	"La Banca Dati Italiana è stata prodotta usando quale riferimento anche cartografia numerica ed al tratto prodotta e fornita dalla Regione Toscana."
Norway	"Copyright © 2000; Norwegian Mapping Authority"
Portugal	"Source: IgeoE – Portugal"
Spain	"Información geográfica propiedad del CNIG"
Sweden	"Based upon electronic data © National Land Survey Sweden."
Switzerland	"Topografische Grundlage: © Bundesamt für Landestopographie.

E. Respective Country Distribution. Client acknowledges that HERE has not received approvals to distribute map data for the following countries in such respective countries: Albania, Belarus, Kyrgyzstan, Moldova and Uzbekistan. HERE may update such list from time to time. The license rights granted to Client under this TL with respect to the Data for such countries are contingent upon Client's compliance with all applicable laws and regulations, including, without limitation, any required licenses or approvals to distribute the Application incorporating such Data in such respective countries.

VI. Australia Territory

A. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Copyright. Based on data provided under license from PSMA Australia Limited (www.psma.com.au).

Product incorporates data which is © 20XX Telstra Corporation Limited, GM Holden Limited, Intelematics Australia Pty Ltd and Continental Pty Ltd.

B. Third Party Notices for Australia. In addition to the foregoing, the End-User Terms for any Application containing RDS-TMC Traffic Codes for Australia shall contain the following notice: "Product incorporates traffic location codes which is © 20XX Telstra Corporation Limited and its licensors."

VII. China Territory

Personal Use Only

You agree to use this Data together with [insert name of Client Application] for the solely personal, non-commercial purposes for which you were licensed, and not for service bureau, time-sharing or other similar purposes. Accordingly, but subject to the restrictions set forth in the following paragraphs, you may copy this Data only as necessary for your personal use to (i) view it, and (ii) save it, provided that you do not remove any copyright notices that appear and do not modify the Data in any way. You agree not to otherwise reproduce, copy, modify, decompile, disassemble or reverse engineer any portion of this Data, and may not transfer or distribute it in any form, for any purpose, except to the extent permitted by mandatory laws.

Restrictions

Except where you have been specifically licensed to do so by NAV2 , and without limiting the preceding paragraph, you may not (a) use this Data with any products, systems, or applications installed or otherwise connected to or in communication with vehicles, capable of vehicle navigation, positioning, dispatch, real time route guidance, fleet management or similar applications; or (b) with or in communication with any positioning devices or any mobile or wireless-connected electronic or computer devices, including without limitation cellular phones, palmtop and handheld computers, pagers, and personal digital assistants or PDAs. You agree to cease using this Data if you fail to comply with these terms and conditions.

Limited Warranty

NAV2 warrants that (a) the Data will perform substantially in accordance with the accompanying written materials for a period of ninety (90) days from the date of receipt, and (b) any support services provided by NAV2 shall be substantially as described in applicable written materials provided to you by NAV2, and NAV2's support engineers will make commercially reasonable efforts to solve any problem issues.

rigCustomer Remedies

NAV2 and its suppliers' entire liability and your exclusive remedy shall be, at NAV2's sole discretion, either (a) return of the price paid, if any, or (b) repair or replacement of the Data that do not meet NAV2's Limited Warranty and that are returned to NAV2 with a copy of your receipt. This Limited Warranty is void if failure of the Data has resulted from accident, abuse, or misapplication. Any replacement Data will be warranted for the remainder of the original warranty period or thirty (30) days, whichever is longer. Neither these remedies nor any product support services offered by NAV2 are available without proof of purchase from an authorized international source.

No Other Warranty:

EXCEPT FOR THE LMITED WARRANTY SET FORTH ABOVE AND TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, NAV2 AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) DISCLAIM ANY WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, OF QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, OWNERSHIP OR NON-INFRINGEMENT. Certain warranty exclusions may not be permitted under applicable law, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

Limited Liability:

TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, NAV2 AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) SHALL NOT BE LIABLE TO YOU: IN RESPECT OF ANY CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION, IRRESPECTIVE OF THE NATURE OF THE CAUSE OF THE CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION ALLEGING ANY LOSS, INJURY OR DAMAGES, DIRECT OR INDIRECT, WHICH MAY RESULT FROM THE USE OR POSSESSION OF THE INFORMATION; OR FOR ANY LOSS OF PROFIT, REVENUE, CONTRACTS OR SAVINGS, OR ANY OTHER DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THIS INFORMATION, ANY DEFECT IN THE INFROMATION, OR THE BREACH OF THESE TERMS OR CONDITIONS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION IN CONTRACT OR TORT OR BASED ON A WARRANTY, EVEN IF NAV2 OR ITS LICENSORS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. UNDER NO CIRCUMSTANCES SHALL NAV2's OR ITS SUPPLIERS' LIABILITY HEREUNDER EXCEED THE PRICE PAID. Certain liability exclusions may not be permitted under applicable law, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

Export Control

You agree not to export to anywhere any part of the Data provided to you or any direct product thereof except in compliance with, and with all licenses and approvals required under, applicable export laws, rules and regulations.

IP Protection

The Data are owned by NAV2 or its suppliers and are protected by applicable copyright and other intellectual property law and treaties. The Data are provided solely on the basis of a license to use, not sale.

Entire Agreement

These terms and conditions constitute the entire agreement between NAV2(and its licensors, including their licensors and suppliers) and you pertaining to the subject matter hereof, and supersedes in their entirety any and all written or oral agreements previously existing between us with respect to such subject matter.

Governing Law.

The above terms and conditions shall be governed by the laws of the People's Republic of China, without giving effect to (i) its conflict of laws provisions, or (ii) the United Nations Convention for Contracts for the International Sale of Goods, which is explicitly excluded. Any dispute arising from or in connection with the Data provided to you hereunder shall be submitted to the Shanghai International Economic and Trade Arbitration Commission for arbitration.

Gracenote® Copyright

CD and music-related data from Gracenote, Inc., copyright©

2000-2007 Gracenote. Gracenote Software, copyright © 2000-2007 Gracenote. This product and service may practice one or more of the following U.S. Patents 5,987,525; 6,061,680; 6,154,773; 6,161,132; 6,230,192; 6,230,207; 6.240,459; 6,330,593 and other patents issued or pending. Some services supplied under license from Open Globe, Inc. for U.S. Patent 6,304,523.

Gracenote and CDDB are registered trademarks of Gracenote. The Gracenote logo and logotype, and the "Powered by Gracenote™" logo are trademarks of Gracenote.

Gracenote® End User License Agreement (EULA)

This device contains software from Gracenote, Inc. of 2000 Powell Street Emeryville, California 94608 ("Gracenote").

The software from Gracenote (the "Gracenote Software") enables this device to do disc and music file identification and obtain music-related information, including name, artist, track, and title information ("Gracenote Data") from online servers ("Gracenote Servers"), and to perform other functions. You may use Gracenote Data only by means of the intended End User functions of this device. This device may contain content belonging to Gracenote's providers. If so, all of the restrictions set forth herein with respect to Gracenote Data shall also apply to such content and such content providers shall be entitled to all of the benefits and protections set forth herein that are available to Gracenote. You agree that you will use the content from Gracenote ("Gracenote Content") , Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers for your own personal, non-commercial use only. You agree not to assign, copy, transfer or transmit the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Software or any Gracenote Data (except in a Tag associated with a music file) to any third party. YOU AGREE NOT TO USE OR EXPLOIT GRACENOTE CONTENT, GRACENOTE DATA, THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE, OR GRACENOTE SERVERS, EXCEPT AS EXPRESSLY PERMITTED HEREIN.

You agree that your non-exclusive licenses to use the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers will terminate if you violate these restrictions. If your licenses terminate, you agree to cease any and all use of the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers.

Gracenote, respectively, reserve all rights in Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and the Gracenote Servers and Gracenote Content, including all ownership rights. Under no circumstances will either Gracenote become liable for any payment to you for any information that you provide, including any copyrighted material or music file information. You agree that Gracenote may enforce its respective rights, collectively or separately, under this agreement against you, directly in each company's own name.

Gracenote uses a unique identifier to track queries for statistical purposes. The purpose of a randomly assigned numeric identifier is to allow Gracenote to count queries without knowing anything about who you are. For more information, see the web page at www.gracenote.com for the Gracenote Privacy Policy.

THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE, EACH ITEM OF GRACENOTE DATA AND THE GRACENOTE CONTENT ARE LICENSED TO YOU "AS IS". NEITHER GRACENOTE MAKES ANY REPRESENTATIONS OR WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, REGARDING THE ACCURACY OF ANY GRACENOTE DATA FROM THE

GRACENOTE SERVERS OR GRACENOTE CONTENT. GRACENOTE COLLECTIVELY AND SEPARATELY RESERVE THE RIGHT TO DELETE DATA AND/OR CONTENT FROM THE COMPANIES' RESPECTIVE SERVERS OR, IN THE CASE OF GRACENOTE, CHANGE DATA CATEGORIES FOR ANY CAUSE THAT GRACENOTE DEEMS SUFFICIENT. NO WARRANTY IS MADE THAT EITHER GRACENOTE CONTENT OR THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR GRACENOTE SERVERS ARE ERROR-FREE OR THAT THE FUNCTIONING OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR GRACENOTE SERVERS WILL BE UNINTERRUPTED. GRACENOTE IS NOT OBLIGATED TO PROVIDE YOU WITH ANY ENHANCED OR ADDITIONAL DATA TYPES THAT GRACENOTE MAY CHOOSE TO PROVIDE IN THE FUTURE AND IS FREE TO DISCONTINUE ITS ONLINE SERVICES AT ANY TIME. GRACENOTE DISCLAIM ALL WARRANTIES EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, TITLE, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT. NEITHER GRACENOTE WARRANTS THE RESULTS THAT WILL BE OBTAINED BY YOUR USE OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR ANY GRACENOTE SERVER. IN NO CASE WILL GRACENOTE BE LIABLE FOR ANY CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES OR FOR ANY LOST PROFITS OR LOST REVENUES FOR ANY REASON WHATSOEVER. © Gracenote 2007.

FCC ID: ACJ-SYNCG3-L

IC: 216B-SYNCG3-L

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with RSS-210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

(1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and

(2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

WARNING

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. The term "IC" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

The antenna used for this transmitter must not be co-located or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.

SUNA TRAFFIC CHANNEL – TERMS AND CONDITIONS

By activating, using and/or accessing the SUNA Traffic Channel, SUNA Predictive or other content or material provided by Intelematics (together, **SUNA Products and/or Services**), you must accept certain terms and conditions. The following is a brief summary of the terms and conditions that apply to you. To view the full terms and conditions relevant to your use of the SUNA Products and/or Services, please consult:

Website
www.sunatraffic.com.au/termsandconditions/

1. Acceptance

By using SUNA Products and/or Services, you will be deemed to have accepted and agreed to be bound by the terms and conditions fully detailed at:

Website
www.sunatraffic.com.au/termsandconditions/

2. Intellectual Property

SUNA Products and/or Services are for your personal use. You may not record, or retransmit the content, nor use the content in association with any other traffic information or route guidance service or device not approved by Intelematics. You obtain no right of ownership in any Intellectual Property Rights (including copyright) in the data that is used to provide SUNA Products and/or Services.

3. Appropriate Use

SUNA Products and/or Services are intended as an aid to personal motoring and travel planning, and do not provide comprehensive or accurate information on all occasions. On occasions, you may experience additional delay as a result of using SUNA Products and/or Services. You acknowledge that it is not intended, or suitable, for use in applications where time of arrival or driving directions may impact the safety of the public or yourself.

4. Use of SUNA Products and Services while driving

You, and other authorised drivers of the vehicle in which SUNA Products and/or Services are available or installed and active, remain at all times responsible for observing all relevant laws and codes of safe driving. In particular, you agree to only actively operate SUNA Products and/or Services when the Vehicle is at a complete stop and it is safe to do so.

5. Service Continuity and Reception of the SUNA Traffic Channel

We will use reasonable endeavours to provide the SUNA Traffic Channel 24 hours a day, 365 days a year. The SUNA Traffic Channel may occasionally be unavailable for technical reasons or for planned maintenance. We will try to perform maintenance at times when congestion is light. We reserve the right to withdraw SUNA Products and/or Services at any time.

Also, we cannot assure the uninterrupted reception of the SUNA Traffic Channel RDS-TMC signal at any particular location.

6. Limitation of Liability

Neither Intelematics (nor its suppliers or the manufacturer of your device (the "**Suppliers**")) shall be liable to you or to any third party for any damages either direct, indirect, incidental, consequential or otherwise arising out of the use of or inability to use SUNA Products and/or Services even if Intelematics or a Supplier has been advised of the possibility of such damages. You also acknowledge that the neither Intelematics nor any Supplier guarantees nor make any warranties that relate to the availability, accuracy or completeness of SUNA Products and/or Services, and to the extent which it is lawful to do so, both Intelematics and each Supplier excludes any warranties which might otherwise be implied by any State or Federal legislation in relation to SUNA Products and/or Services.

7. Please Note

Great care has been taken in preparing this manual. Constant product development may mean that some information is not entirely up-to-date. The information in this document is subject to change without notice.

WARNING

Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

TYPE APPROVALS

RF Certification Logos for Tire Pressure Monitoring Sensor(s)



E207816

Argentina



E207817

Abu Dhabi, Dubai

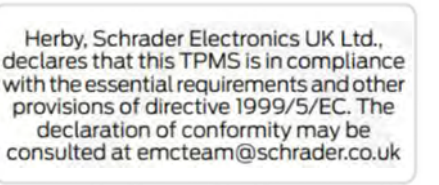


E197509



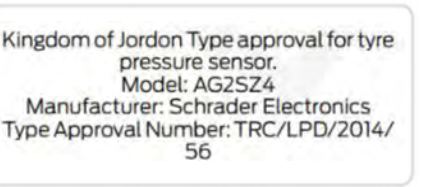
E202555

Brazil



E207818

European Union EU



E207819

Jordan



E207820

Malaysia



E197844

Serbia



E197811

Moldova



E207822

Singapore



E207821

Morocco



E198002

South Africa



E198001

Philippines



E203899



E203679

Taiwan



Schrader Electronics цім стверджує, що обладнання Радіопередавач моделі AG2SZ4 системи контролю тиску в шині автомобіла відповідає вимогам Технічного регламенту радіообладнання і телекомунікаційного кінцевого (термінального) обладнання (Постанова КМУ № 679 від 24 червня 2009 р.) Декларація відповідності знаходиться на сайті Schrader Electronics та надається за запитом на електрону адресу doc.request@schrader.co.uk

E198009

Ukraine

A

A/C
See: Climate Control....80
About This Manual....5
ABS
See: Brakes....110
ABS driving hints
See: Hints on Driving With Anti-Lock Brakes....110
Accessories
See: Replacement Parts Recommendation....8
Adjusting the Headlamps....161
Horizontal Aim Adjustment....162
Vertical Aim....161
Adjusting the Steering Wheel....45
Air Conditioning
See: Climate Control....80
Air Vents....80
Center Air Vents....80
Side Air Vents....80
Alarm
See: Anti-Theft Alarm - Vehicles With: Integral Battery....43
See: Anti-Theft Alarm - Vehicles With: Interior Sensor....41
See: Anti-Theft Alarm - Vehicles With: Perimeter Alarm....41
Ambient Lighting....53
Anti-Theft Alarm - Vehicles With: Integral Battery....43
Alarm System....43
Arming the Alarm....44
Disarming the Alarm....44
Full and Reduced Guard....44
Triggering the Alarm....43
Anti-Theft Alarm - Vehicles With: Interior Sensor....41
Alarm System....41
Arming the Alarm....43
Disarming the Alarm....43
Full and Reduced Guard....42
Triggering the Alarm....42
Anti-Theft Alarm - Vehicles With: Perimeter Alarm....41
Arming the Alarm....41
Disarming the Alarm....41
Appendices....260
Apps....234
....234
At a Glance....9
Audible Warnings and Indicators....61
Headlamps On Warning Chime....61
Keyless Warning Alert....61
Parking Brake On Warning Chime....62
Audio Control....45
MEDIA....45
Seek, Next or Previous....45
Audio System....194
General Information....194
Audio Unit - Vehicles With: Premium AM/FM/CD....195
Autolamps....50
Windshield Wiper Activated Headlamps....50
Automatic Climate Control....81
Automatic Transmission....105
Automatic Transmission Adaptive Learning....107
Brake-Shift Interlock....106
If Your Vehicle Gets Stuck In Mud or Snow....107
SelectShift Automatic™ Transmission....106
Understanding the Positions of Your Automatic Transmission....105
Automatic Transmission Fluid Check....157
Autowipers....47
Auxiliary Power Points....92
12 Volt DC Power Point....92
Locations....92

B

Battery
See: Changing the 12V Battery....159
Bonnet Lock
See: Opening and Closing the Hood....149
Brake Fluid Check....158
Brakes....110
General Information....110
Breaking-In....132
Brakes and Clutch....132
Engine....132

Tires....132
Bulb Specification Chart....166

C

Cabin Air Filter....85
Capacities and Specifications....190
Car Wash
See: Cleaning the Exterior....168
Catalytic Converter....101
Driving with a Catalytic Converter....101
Center Console....93
Locking Storage Bin....93
Changing a Bulb....163
Daytime Running Lamp....164
Front Direction Indicator....164
Front Fog Lamp....165
Front Side Lamp....163
Headlamp....163
Headlamp Low and High Beam....164
LED Lamps....165
Rear Fog Lamp....165
Reversing Lamp....165
Changing a Fuse....147
Fuses....147
Changing a Road Wheel....183
Dissimilar Spare Wheel and Tire Assembly Information....184
Removing a Road Wheel....185
Vehicle Jack....185
Changing the 12V Battery....159
Remove and Reinstall the Battery....160
Changing the Wiper Blades....160
Changing the Windshield Wiper Blades....161
Service Position....160
Checking MyKey System Status....34
Checking Seatbelt Fit....15
Checking the Wiper Blades....160
Child Restraint Anchorage Locations....13
Upper (top tether) anchorages....13
Child Restraints....11
Child Safety....11
Cigar Lighter....92
Cleaning Leather Seats....170
Cleaning the Alloy Wheels....170
Cleaning the Convertible Top....171
Cleaning the Exterior....168
Body Paintwork Preservation....168
Cleaning Stripes or Graphics....168
Cleaning the Chrome Trim....168
Cleaning the Headlamps....168
Cleaning the Rear Window....168
Cleaning the Interior....168
Fabric, Carpets, Cloth Seats, Headliners and Floor Mats....169
Instrument Cluster Screens, LCD Screens and Radio Screens....169
Leather Interior....169
Rear Windows....170
Seatbelts....169
Storage Compartments, Cup Holders and Ashtrays....170
Suede Micro Fiber Fabric....169
Clearing All MyKeys....33
Climate....219
Climate Control....80
Principle of Operation....80
Climate Controlled Seats....90
Cooled Seats....90
Closing the Convertible Top....130
Clutch Fluid Check - Manual Transmission....158
Cold Weather Precautions....133
Convertible Top....129
Coolant Check
See: Engine Coolant Check....153
Crash Sensors and Airbag Indicator....24
Creating a MyKey....32
Programming/Changing Configurable Settings....32
Cruise Control....46
Principle of Operation....122
Type One....46
Type Two....46
Cruise control
See: Using Cruise Control....122
Cup Holders....93

D

Data Recording....7
Daytime Running Lamps....51
Digital Radio....197
General Information....197

Mustang (CZG) Australia, Vehicles Built From: 02-05-2016, enAUS, First Printing

Direction Indicators....52
Doors and Locks....36
Drive Control....124
Selectable Drive Modes....124
Selectable Steering....125
Driver Airbag....19
Driver and Passenger Knee Airbags....23
Driving Aids....124
Driving at High Speed....188
Driving Hints....132
Driving Through Water....133
DRL
See: Daytime Running Lamps....51

E

Economical Driving....132
Accessories....133
Anticipation....132
Efficient Speed....133
Electrical Systems....133
Gear Shifting....132
Tire Pressures....132
Electromagnetic Compatibility....260
Convertible....261
End User License Agreement....263
VEHICLE SOFTWARE END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT (EULA) 263
Engine Block Heater....97
Using the Engine Block Heater....98
Engine Coolant Check....153
Adding Coolant....154
Coolant Change....155
Engine Coolant Temperature Management....157
Fail-Safe Cooling....156
Recycled Coolant....155
Severe Climates....155
Engine Immobilizer
See: Passive Anti-Theft System....41
Engine Oil Check....153
Adding Engine Oil....153
Engine Oil Dipstick....153
Entertainment....215
AM/FM Radio....216
Apps....218
Bluetooth Stereo or USB....217
CD....216
Sources....215
Supported Media Players, Formats and Metadata Information....219
USB Port....218
Event Data Recording
See: Data Recording....7
Exterior Mirrors....55
Fold-Away Exterior Mirrors....55
Heated Exterior Mirrors....56
Power Exterior Mirrors....55
Power-Folding Mirrors....55
Signal Indicator Mirrors....56

F

Fastening the Seatbelts....17
Using Seatbelts During Pregnancy....18
First Aid Kit....135
Flat Tire Inflation
See: Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit....172
Floor Mats....133
Fog Lamps - Front
See: Front Fog Lamps....51
Fog Lamps - Rear
See: Rear Fog Lamps....52
Front Fog Lamps....51
Front Passenger Sensing System....20
Fuel and Refueling....99
Fuel Filler Funnel Location....100
Fuel Filter....159
Fuel Quality....100
Long-Term Storage....100
Fuel Shutoff....135
Fuses....140
Fuse Specification Chart....140
Passenger Compartment Fuse Panel....144
Power Distribution Box....140

G

Gauges....57
Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge....58
Fuel Gauge....58
Information Display....57
General Information on Radio Frequencies....28
Glasses Holder....93

Global Opening....54
Opening the Windows....55

H

Handbrake
See: Parking Brake....110
Hazard Warning Flashers....135
Headlamp Adjusting
See: Adjusting the Headlamps....161
Headlamp Exit Delay....51
Headlamp Leveling....52
Recommended Headlamp Leveling Switch Positions....52
Head Restraints....87
Adjusting the Head Restraint....87
Tilting Head Restraints....87
Heated Windows and Mirrors....85
Heated Exterior Mirror....85
Heated Rear Window....85
Heating
See: Climate Control....80
Hill Start Assist....111
Switching the System On and Off....112
Using Hill Start Assist....111
Hints on Controlling the Interior Climate....82
Cooling the Interior Quickly....84
General Hints....82
Heating the Interior Quickly....83
Recommended Settings for Cooling....84
Recommended Settings for Heating....83
Side Window Defogging in Cold Weather....84
Hints on Driving With Anti-Lock Brakes....110
Home Screen....208
Hood Lock
See: Opening and Closing the Hood....149

I

Information Display Control....46
Information Displays....63
General Information....63
Information Messages....70
Airbag....71
Alarm....71
Battery and Charging System....71
Doors and Locks....72
Electronic Stability Control....72
Engine....73
Fuel....73
Hill Start Assist....73
Keys and Intelligent Access....73
Maintenance....74
MyKey....75
Park Brake....75
Park Pilot....76
Rear Axle....76
Seats....76
Starting System....76
Steering System....77
Tire Pressure Monitoring System....77
Traction Control....78
Transmission....78
Installing Child Restraints....12
Instrument Cluster....57
Instrument Lighting Dimmer....51
Instrument Panel Overview....9
Interior Lamps....53
Map Lamps....53
Interior Mirror....56
Auto-Dimming Mirror....56
Introduction....5

J

Jump Starting the Vehicle....136
Connecting the Jumper Cables....136
Jump Starting....137
Preparing Your Vehicle....136
Removing the Jumper Cables....137

K

Keyless Entry....38
Disabled Passive Keys....40
General Information....38
Locking and Unlocking the Doors with the Key Blade....40
Locking Your Vehicle....39
Passive Key....39
Unlocking Your Vehicle....39
Keyless Starting....94
Ignition Modes....94

Keys and Remote Controls....28

L

Lighting Control....49
Headlamp Flasher....50
High Beams....49
Lighting....49
General Information....49
Limited Slip Differential....109
Load Carrying....127
General Information....127
Locking and Unlocking....36
Auto Relock....37
Locking and Unlocking the Doors From Inside....37
Locking and Unlocking the Doors with the Key Blade....37
Opening the Luggage Compartment....38
Power Door Locks....36
Remote Control....36
Lug Nuts
See: Changing a Road Wheel....183

M

Maintenance....149
General Information....149
Manual Seats....88
Manual Transmission....105
Selecting Reverse Gear....105
Media Hub....198
Message Center
See: Information Displays....63
Mirrors
See: Heated Windows and Mirrors....85
See: Windows and Mirrors....54
Mobile Communications Equipment....8
MyKey Troubleshooting....35
MyKey™....31
Principle of Operation....31

N

Navigation....228
Destination Mode....229
Map Mode....228
Navigation Map Updates....234
Navigation Menu....232
Waypoints....233

O

Oil Check
See: Engine Oil Check....153
Opening and Closing the Hood....149
Closing the Hood....150
Opening the Hood....149
Opening the Convertible Top....129
Using the Tonneau Caps....130

P

Parking Aids....117
Principle of Operation....117
Parking Brake....110
Passenger Airbag....20
....20
Passive Anti-Theft System....41
Arming the Engine Immobilizer....41
Coded Keys....41
Disarming the Engine Immobilizer....41
Principle of Operation....41
PATS
See: Passive Anti-Theft System....41
Pedestrian Protection....26
Principle of Operation....26
Phone....223
During a Phone Call....226
Making Calls....225
Pairing Your Cell Phone for the First Time....223
Phone Menu....224
Receiving Calls....226
Smartphone Connectivity....227
Text Messaging....227
Post-Crash Alert System....138
Power Door Locks
See: Locking and Unlocking....36
Power Seats....88
Power Lumbar....89
Power Windows....54
Accessory Delay....54
Bounce-Back....54
One-Touch Down....54
One-Touch Up....54

Protecting Larger Children....15
Typical Booster Seat....15

R

Rear Axle....109
Rear Fog Lamps....52
Rear Parking Aid....117
Obstacle Distance Indicator....118
Rear Seats....89
Accessing the Rear Seats....89
Second Row Split-Folding Rear Seat 90
Rear View Camera....118
Using the Rear View Camera System....119
Rear View Camera
See: Rear View Camera....118
Reduced Engine Performance....132
Refueling....102
System Warnings....103
Remote Control....28
Changing the Remote Control Battery....29
Intelligent Access Key....28
Memory Feature....30
Using the Key Blade....29
Repairing Minor Paint Damage....170
Replacement Parts Recommendation....8
Collision Repairs....8
Scheduled Maintenance and Mechanical Repairs....8
Warranty on Replacement Parts....8
Replacing a Lost Key or Remote Control....30
Roadside Emergencies....135
Running-In
See: Breaking-In....132
Running Out of Fuel....100
Adding Fuel From a Portable Fuel Container....101
Filling a Portable Fuel Container....100

S

Safety Precautions....99
Seatbelt Reminder....18
Switching the Seatbelt Reminder Off....18
Seatbelts....16
Principle of Operation....16
Seats....86
Security....41
Selecting a Child Restraint System....12
....12
Settings....235
Ambient Lighting....246
Bluetooth....238
Clock....238
Display....246
General....244
Media Player....236
Mobile Apps....243
Navigation....241
Phone....238
Radio....241
Sound....235
Valet Mode....247
Vehicle....246
Voice Control....247
Wi-Fi....245
Side Airbags....23
Side Curtain Airbags - Coupe....24
Sitting in the Correct Position....86
Speed Control
See: Cruise Control....122
Stability Control....114
Principle of Operation....114
Starting a Gasoline Engine....95
Automatic Engine Shutdown....96
Failure to Start....96
Fast Restart....96
Guarding Against Exhaust Fumes....97
Important Ventilating Information....97
Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Moving....97
Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Stationary....96
Starting and Stopping the Engine....94
General Information....94
Steering....124
Electric Power Steering....124
Steering Wheel Lock....95
Unlocking the Steering Wheel....95
Steering Wheel....45
Storage Compartments....93
Sun Visors....56
Illuminated Vanity Mirror....56

Supplementary Restraints System.....19
Principle of Operation.....19
Symbols Glossary.....5
SYNC™ 3.....199
General Information.....199
SYNC™ 3 Troubleshooting.....248

T

Technical Specifications
See: Capacities and Specifications.....190
Tire Care.....178
Tire Inflation When Punctured
See: Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit.....172
Tire Pressure Monitoring System.....179
Changing Tires With a Tire Pressure Monitoring System.....180
How Temperature Affects the Tire Pressures.....180
Tire Pressure Monitoring System Reset Procedure.....182
Understanding the Tire Pressure Monitoring System.....181
Tire Repair Kit
See: Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit.....172
Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit.....172
First Stage: Inflating the Tire with Sealing Compound and Air.....174
General Information.....173
Second Stage: Checking Tire Pressure.....176
Tips for Use of the Kit.....173
What to Do After the Tire has Been Sealed.....176
What to do When a Tire Is Punctured.....174
Tires
See: Wheels and Tires.....172
Towing a Trailer.....128
Towing Points.....139
Installing the Recovery Hook.....139
Recovery Hook Location.....139
Towing the Vehicle on Four Wheels.....128
Emergency Towing.....128
Recreational Towing.....128
Towing.....128
Traction Control.....113
Principle of Operation.....113
Transmission.....105
Transmission
See: Transmission.....105
Transporting the Vehicle.....138
Type Approvals.....287
RF Certification Logos for Tire Pressure Monitoring Sensor(s).....287

U

Under Hood Overview - 2.3L EcoBoost™.....151
Under Hood Overview - 5.0L.....152
USB Port.....198
Using Cruise Control.....122
Switching Cruise Control Off.....123
Switching Cruise Control On.....122
Using MyKey With Remote Start Systems.....35
Using Stability Control.....115
Electronic Stability Control.....115
Using Summer Tires.....179
Using Traction Control.....113
Switching the System Off.....113
System Indicator Lights and Messages.....113
Using Voice Recognition.....209
Audio Voice Commands.....210
Climate Voice Commands.....210
Mobile App Voice Commands.....213
Navigation Voice Commands.....212
Phone Voice Commands.....211
Voice Settings Commands.....214

V

Vehicle Care.....168
Vehicle Dimensions - Convertible.....191
Vehicle Dimensions - Coupe.....190
Vehicle Identification Number.....192
Vehicle Identification Plate.....192
Built Date.....192
Ventilation
See: Climate Control.....80
Vents
See: Air Vents.....80
VIN
See: Vehicle Identification Number.....192

Voice Control....46

W

Warning Lamps and Indicators....59
Anti-Lock Braking System....59
Battery....59
Bonnet Ajar....59
Boot Ajar....59
Brake System....59
Cruise Control....59
Direction Indicator....59
Door Ajar....59
Engine Coolant Temperature....60
Engine Oil....60
Fasten Seatbelt....60
Front Airbag....60
Front Fog Lamps....60
High Beam....60
Low Beam Malfunction....60
Low Fuel Level....60
Low Tire Pressure Warning....60
Parking Lamps....60
Rear Fog Lamps Indicator....60
Service Engine Soon....61
Stability Control....61
Stability Control Off....61
Warning Triangle....135
Washer Fluid Check....158
Washers
See: Cleaning the Exterior....168
See: Wipers and Washers....47
Welcome Lighting....53
Mustang Projection Lamps....53
Wheel Nuts
See: Changing a Road Wheel....183
Wheels and Tires....172
General Information....172
Technical Specifications....189
Windows and Mirrors....54
Windshield Washers....48
Windshield Wipers....47
Intermittent Wipe....47
Speed Dependent Wipers....47
Wiper Blades
See: Checking the Wiper Blades....160
Wipers and Washers....47